NATIONAL GUIDELINES FOR COMPREHENSIVE HIV PREVENTION, CARE AND TREATMENT

FEDERAL MINISTRY OF HEALTH

Feb, 2017
Antiretroviral treatment began in 2003 and free ART was launched in Ethiopia in 2005. An estimated 738,976 Ethiopians are currently living with HIV and all of them require antiretroviral treatment (ART) however only 426,000 are currently taking ARV.

Recognizing the need for antiretroviral treatment, the Government of Ethiopia (GOE) issued the first antiretroviral (ARV) guidelines in 2003, which were revised in 2005 and 2008 to facilitate a rapid scale up of ART. With continued care and treatment updates the Federal Ministry of Health revised the national guideline in order to scale up and improve the quality of service at all levels of care and treatment.

Expansion and strengthening ART care and treatment activities at regional, zonal, woreda and kebele levels through targeted social mobilization and active community participation are expected to create an enabling environment to prevent and control spread of the epidemic. The process of task shifting: training of nurses and community health agents in prevention, treatment, care and support activities will further strengthen community linkages and ensure availability of standard minimum packages of HIV/AIDS services at primary health care level. Currently there are more than 1100 health facilities providing HIV care and treatment service.

This revised 5th edition of guidelines for use of OI and ARV drugs in adult and children is based on recent national and global evidence and experience and is intended as a clear guide for rational and safe use of OI and antiretroviral drugs. The Federal Ministry of Health believes that these guidelines, along with other national implementation guidelines, will be instrumental in accelerating and scaling up ART uptake.

Kebede Worku, MD,MPH

State Minister
# Contents

Forward ................................................................................................................................................................................... i

Acknowledgement........................................................................................................................................................................ vii

Acronyms and Abbreviations ............................................................................................................................................... viii

CHAPTER ONE: - INTRODUCTION..................................................................................................................................... 1

1.1. Background and context ........................................................................................................................................ 1

1.2. Rationale for the consolidated guideline ..................................................................................................................... 2

1.2.1. Objectives of the guideline ................................................................................................................................... 2

1.2.2. Target Audience.................................................................................................................................................... 2

1.2.3. Guiding principles ................................................................................................................................................ 3

CHAPTER TWO - HIV DIAGNOSIS AND PREVENTION..................................................................................................... 5

2.1. HIV Testing and counseling (HTC) services................................................................................................................ 5

2.1.1. Guiding Principles................................................................................................................................................ 5

2.1.2. Service Delivery Approaches................................................................................................................................ 6

2.1.3. Procedures of HTS delivery .............................................................................................................................. 9

2.1.4. Retesting.............................................................................................................................................................. 12

Repeat testing ................................................................................................................................................................. 12

II. Retesting before initiating of ART ................................................................................................................................ 13

2.2. HIV testing and counseling in specific populations................................................................................................. 14

2.3. Quality Management .............................................................................................................................................. 19

2.4. Policy, Ethical & Legal considerations for HIV Testing and Counseling............................................................... 20

2.5. Linking people diagnosed with HIV infection........................................................................................................ 24

2.6. Post Exposure management including Prophylaxis ................................................................................................. 26

2.6.1. Management of occupational exposure to HIV .................................................................................................. 26

2.6.2. Prevention of the transmission of the Human Immunodeficiency Virus (HIV) after sexual assault: ............ 32

2.7. Combination Prevention ............................................................................................................................................. 34

2.8. Care of HIV exposed infants ..................................................................................................................................... 38
CHAPTER THREE: CARE AND TREATMENT of PEOPLE WITH HIV INFECTION

3.1. General care packages for PLHIV

3.2. Preparing people living with HIV for ART

3.3. When to Start ART

3.4. What ART regimen to start with (first-line ART)

3.5. Monitoring response to ART

3.5.1. What to expect in the first months of ART and how to manage them

3.5.2. Immune reconstitution inflammatory syndrome (IRIS)

3.5.3. Clinical and Laboratory monitoring

3.5.4. Monitoring drug toxicities and substitution of ARV

3.6. Diagnosis and Management of antiretroviral treatment failure

3.7. What ART regimen to switch to (second-line ART regimens)

3.7.1. Second-line ART for children (including adolescents)

3.8. Identification and management of second line treatment failure

CHAPTER FOUR: PREVENTION, SCREENING AND MANAGEMENT OF COMMON CO-INFECTIONS

4.1. Co-trimoxazole preventive therapy (CPT)

4.2. Management of Opportunistic Diseases of the respiratory system

4.2.1. Tuberculosis

Reduce the Burden of HIV in Patients with Presumptive and Confirmed TB

Provide HIV testing and counseling to presumptive and confirmed TB patients

Introduce HIV prevention interventions for presumptive and confirmed TB patients

Provide co-trimoxazole preventive therapy for HIV positive TB patients

Ensure HIV/AIDS prevention, treatment and care for HIV positive TB patients

Provide Antiretroviral Therapy for HIV positive TB patients

Management consideration for TB/HIV Co-infections

4.2.2. Bacterial pneumonia
4.2.3. Pneumocystis Pneumonia ................................................................. 106
4.2.4. Lymphoid Interstitial Pneumonitis (LIP) ........................................ 107
4.3. Management of Gastrointestinal Opportunistic Diseases .................. 109
4.3.1. Dysphagia and odynophagia.............................................................. 109
4.3.2. Diarrhoea ......................................................................................... 110
4.3.3. Peri-anal problems ......................................................................... 113
4.4. Management of Opportunistic Diseases of the Nervous System ........ 116
4.4.1. Toxoplasma gondii Encephalitis ...................................................... 117
4.4.2. Cryptococcal infection .................................................................. 119
4.4.3. Peripheral Neuropathies ................................................................. 124
4.5. Cutaneous manifestations .................................................................. 125
4.5.1. Etiological Classification of Skin Disorders in HIV Disease .............. 125
4.5.3. Pruritic Papular Eruption ................................................................. 127
4.6. Visceral Leishmaniasis ...................................................................... 128
4.7. Screening for co-morbidities ............................................................... 128
CHAPTER FIVE: Service delivery ................................................................. 130
5.1. Differentiated Care ............................................................................ 131
The role of PLHIV and PLHIV associations ............................................ 135
Expected outcomes .................................................................................. 135
5.2. Linkage from HIV testing to enrollment in care ................................. 135
5.3 Disclosure .......................................................................................... 137
5.3.1. Disclosure in Children ................................................................. 137
5.3.2. Planning for Disclosure .................................................................. 141
5.3.3. Disclosure in adults ...................................................................... 144
5.4. Retention in Care ............................................................................ 146
5.5. Adherence to ART ............................................................................ 152
5.5.1. Barriers to adherence ................................................................. 152
Annex 2: Dosage of antiretroviral drugs for adults and adolescents ................................................................. 207
Annex 3: Dosage of antiretroviral drugs in children .......................................................................................... 208
Annex 4: Pediatric ARV Drug Formulations, Side Effects and Special considerations in Children .................. 211
Annex 5 Grading of toxicity in adults and adolescents ...................................................................................... 216
Annex 6- Grading of adverse events in children ............................................................................................... 218
Annex 7Laboratory Grading of Adverse Events in Adults and adolescents (ACTG) .............................................. 221
Annex 8-Grading toxicities in children by selected laboratory findings ........................................................... 222
Annex 8: Pediatric TB screening tool .............................................................................................................. 224
Annex 9: Adult TB screening tool ................................................................................................................... 225
The Ministry of Health expresses its appreciation for the institutions participated in the development of this consolidated HIV prevention care and treatment guideline and extends special thanks for supporting the workshop for revision of the guideline and training materials. **The printing of the guidelines has been funded by ICAP Ethiopia and WHO country offices.**

The ministry also recognizes the following experts for their contribution in the development of the Guideline

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Organization</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dr Fethia Keder</td>
<td>FMOH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mrs Seble Mamo</td>
<td>FMOH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dr Kassu Ketema</td>
<td>FMOH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dr Shewaminale Yohannes</td>
<td>FMOH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dr Zelalem Tadesse</td>
<td>FMOH/ICAP-E</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dr Ambachew Tefera</td>
<td>FMOH/PHSP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mr Dagim Damitew</td>
<td>FMOH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dr Eyerusalem Kebede</td>
<td>FMOH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ms Kidist Zealias</td>
<td>EPHI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mr Getnet Hailu</td>
<td>EPHI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dr Eshetu Gezehagn</td>
<td>PHSP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dr Petros Mitiku</td>
<td>PHSP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dr Akerja Refisa</td>
<td>ICAP-E</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dr Yoseph Gutema</td>
<td>ICAP-E</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mr Asmamaw Sileshi</td>
<td>CHAI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dr Daniel Assefa</strong></td>
<td><strong>CHAI</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dr Bahrie Bele</strong></td>
<td><strong>CHAI</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dr Ghion Tirsite</td>
<td>WHO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dr Aschalew Endale</td>
<td>WHO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ms Tsion Tsegaye</td>
<td>PFSA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dr Ismael Ahmed</td>
<td>CDC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dr Chane Temesgen</td>
<td>CDC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dr Mesfin Tilaye</td>
<td>USAID</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mr Alexyv Gizachew</td>
<td>PSM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mr Yalemsew Derib</td>
<td>PSM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mr Dinku Worku</td>
<td>NEP+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acronym</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3TC</td>
<td>Lamivudine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ABC</td>
<td>Abacavir</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AFB</td>
<td>Acid fast bacilli</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AIDS</td>
<td>Acquired Immune Deficiency Syndrome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ANC</td>
<td>Antenatal Care</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ARV</td>
<td>Antiretroviral</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ART</td>
<td>Antiretroviral Therapy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AZT/ZDV</td>
<td>Zidovudine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CBC</td>
<td>Complete Blood Count</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CD4 cells</td>
<td>Type of T-lymphocyte, white blood cells</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CMV</td>
<td>Cytomegalovirus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CPT</td>
<td>Cotrimoxazole Preventive Therapy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DBS</td>
<td>Dried Blood Spot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DTV</td>
<td>Doltugravir</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DRV</td>
<td>Darunavir</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DHS</td>
<td>Demographic and Health Survey</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DNA</td>
<td>Deoxyribonucleic acid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DOTS</td>
<td>Directly Observed Therapy Short Course</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EFV</td>
<td>Efavirenz, also abbreviated as EFZ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FBOs</td>
<td>Faith-based organizations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FDC</td>
<td>Fixed dose combination</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FHAPCO</td>
<td>Federal HIV/AIDS Prevention and Control Office</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FMOH</td>
<td>Federal Ministry of Health</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abbreviation</td>
<td>Definition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HAART</td>
<td>Highly active antiretroviral therapy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HANS training</td>
<td>HIV/AIDS Nurse Specialist training</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HBV</td>
<td>Hepatitis B Virus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HCV</td>
<td>Hepatitis C Virus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HIV</td>
<td>Human Immunodeficiency Virus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HTS</td>
<td>HIV Testing Services</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IDV</td>
<td>Indinavir</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IP</td>
<td>Infection Prevention</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IPT</td>
<td>INH Preventive Therapy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IRIS or IRS</td>
<td>Immune Reconstitution Inflammatory Syndrome also called Immune Reconstitution Syndrome (IRS)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I-TECH</td>
<td>International Training and Education Center on HIV/AIDS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LFT</td>
<td>Liver Function Test</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LPV</td>
<td>Lopinavir</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MTCT</td>
<td>Mother-To-Child Transmission (of HIV)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MD</td>
<td>Medical Doctor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NFV</td>
<td>Nelfinavir</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NGO</td>
<td>Non-governmental Organization</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NNRTI</td>
<td>Non-nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NRTI</td>
<td>Nucleoside Analogue Reverse Transcriptase Inhibitor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NVP</td>
<td>Nevirapine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OIs</td>
<td>Opportunistic Infections</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PCR</td>
<td>Polymerase chain reaction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PEP</td>
<td>Post-exposure prophylaxis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abbreviation</td>
<td>Full Form</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PI</td>
<td>Protease Inhibitor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PITC</td>
<td>Provider Initiative Testing and Counselling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PLHIV</td>
<td>People living with HIV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PMTCT</td>
<td>Prevention of mother-to-child transmission (of HIV)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RNA</td>
<td>Ribonucleic acid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RTV, r</td>
<td>Ritonavir</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PI/r</td>
<td>Ritonavir boosted Protease Inhibitor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RAL</td>
<td>Raltegravir</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RFT</td>
<td>Renal function test</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RT</td>
<td>Reverse transcriptase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STI</td>
<td>Sexually Transmitted Illnesses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TB</td>
<td>Tuberculosis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TDF</td>
<td>Tenofovir</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TLC</td>
<td>Total Lymphocyte Count</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>U/A</td>
<td>Urine analysis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UNAIDS</td>
<td>The Joint United Nations Program on HIV/AIDS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UP</td>
<td>Universal Precautions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WHO</td>
<td>World Health Organization</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZDV</td>
<td>Zidovudine (also abbreviated as AZT)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
CHAPTER ONE: - INTRODUCTION

1.1. Background and context

The first evidence of HIV epidemic in Ethiopia was detected in 1984. Since then, AIDS has claimed the lives of millions and has left behind hundreds of thousands of orphans. The government of Ethiopia took several steps in preventing further disease spread, and in increasing accessibility to HIV care, treatment and support for persons living with HIV.

According to single point HIV related estimates and projections for Ethiopia 2014 the national HIV prevalence is 1.14%. The recent 2011 EDHS shown that the urban prevalence is 4.2% which is seven times higher than that of the rural (0.6%). The 2011 EDHS also shows that the HIV prevalence varies from region to region ranging from 0.9% in SNNPR to 6.5% in Gambela. Furthermore, the HIV related estimates and projections indicate that the 2013 HIV prevalence in regions ranges from 0.8% to 5.8%.

Currently there are 367000 adults and 23400 children under the age of 15 are taking ARV. Based on the 2014 estimate the 2014 ART need is 542 121 for adults and 178500 for children under 15 years of age.

Free ARV service was launched in January 2005 and public hospitals start providing free ARVs in March 2005. ART service is available in 913 Health facilities of which 765 are Health centers. On the basis of the 2010-2014 strategic plan ART coverage for adults (age 15+) has reached 76% but the coverage remains low (23.5%) for children (age <15) living with HIV. The national human resources development strategy focuses on training and upgrading of frontline, low and mid level health workers that will staff primary health facilities. In line with this, appropriate HIV care and ART training, strong follow-up and effective clinical mentorship should continue to ensure the consistent application of the treatment guidelines and maintain the quality of HIV care and ART services at all levels. Since the National ART treatment guideline was last published in 2007, new information as well as evidence-based best practices have become available to make HIV treatment more effective and accessible, creating a need to revise the existing guidelines. Hence, this guideline is developed taking into consideration the current recommendations released by WHO in its 2013 revised guidance for national programs.
The consolidated guidelines offer the following anticipated benefits

- **Guidance on using ARV drugs is presented within the context of the continuum of HIV-related prevention, treatment and care.** In addition to providing recommendations on the clinical use of ARV drugs for treatment, the guidelines address other major aspects of HIV-related care.

- **The guidelines address the use of ARV drugs for all age groups and populations.** Previously separate WHO guidelines on using ART among adults and adolescents have been combined with those for children and for PMTCT, harmonizing ARV regimens and treatment approaches to the extent possible across age groups and populations.

- **New and existing guidance is harmonized.** Consolidation has allowed for new recommendations to be harmonized with relevant, existing WHO guidance.

- **Consolidation promotes the consistency of approaches and linkage between settings.** Consolidated recommendations help to facilitate linkage and promote consistency of approaches across the various settings in which ARV drugs and related services may be provided, including specialized HIV care, primary care, community-based care, maternal and child health services, TB services and services for people who use drugs.

- **Updates will be more timely and comprehensive.** Consolidated guidelines enable key clinical, operational and programmatic implications of new science and emerging practice in the use of ARV drugs to be comprehensively reviewed every two years across populations, age groups and settings.

### 1.2.1. Objectives of the guideline

This new version aims

- to provide updated, evidence-based clinical recommendations outlining a public health approach to providing ARV drugs for HIV treatment and prevention in the context of the continuum of HIV care in the comprehensive HIV/AIDS service delivery setting

- to provide guidance on key operational and service delivery issues that need to be addressed to increase access to HIV services, strengthen the continuum of HIV care and further integrate the provision of ARV drugs into health systems; and to serve as a reference material for health service providers and program managers

### 1.2.2. Target Audience

The guideline is intended to be used by
• Health care workers (physicians, health officers, nurses, pharmacy personnel, laboratory technicians and case managers) providing care to people infected and affected with HIV
• HIV/AIDS program managers, health planners and researchers
• Organizations involved in antiretroviral drug procurement, supply management, and ART service delivery.
• Community based organizations and Faith based organizations working on HIV/AIDS programs

1.2.3. Guiding principles

Public health approach
The public health approach seeks to ensure the widest possible access to high-quality services at the population level, based on simplified and standardized approaches, and to strike a balance between implementing the best-proven standard of care and what is feasible on a large scale in resource-limited settings.

Strengthening health systems through innovation and learning
HIV services are already being integrated at lower-level health facilities in many settings with a high burden of HIV infection, while services for PMTCT are increasingly becoming core elements of maternal and child health services. As people receiving ART begin to age and HIV infection becomes a chronic, manageable condition, improving the integration of HIV services with care for non-communicable diseases will also become more important.

Increasing the effectiveness and efficiency of programmes
HIV programs through a strategic approach to using ARV drugs that involves: giving priority to providing ARV drugs to people living with HIV who are eligible for treatment and most in need; exploring opportunities to enhance the impact of ARV drugs on HIV prevention by starting treatment earlier in certain populations; increasing the effectiveness and reach of ARV programmes across the continuum of care through a strategic mix of quality-assured HIV testing approaches, improving adherence and retention, innovative service delivery, integrating ART in a wider range of settings and strengthening links between services; and engaging in both short- and longer-term efforts to optimize and harmonize drug regimens and increase their affordability and to develop and implement simpler and more affordable point-of-care diagnostics and laboratory services.

Promoting human rights and health equity
Access to HIV prevention, treatment, care and support should be recognized as fundamental to realizing the universal right to health, and these guidelines should be implemented based on core human rights and ethical principles.
**Implementation based on local context**

Implementation of the recommendations in these guidelines should be informed by local context, including HIV epidemiology, availability of resources, the organization and capacity of the health system and anticipated cost-effectiveness.
CHAPTER TWO - HIV DIAGNOSIS AND PREVENTION

2.1. HIV Testing and counseling (HTC) services

The term HIV testing services (HTS) is used in this guideline to embrace the full range of services that should be provided together with HIV testing – counselling (pre-test information and post-test counselling); linkage to appropriate HIV prevention, treatment and care services and other clinical and support services; and coordination with laboratory services to support quality assurance and the delivery of correct results.

HIV testing is the critical first step in identifying and linking PLHIV to the treatment cascade and it also provide an important opportunity to reinforce HIV prevention among the negatives.

Ensuring service quality is the area which should not be compromised in HIV testing and counseling services provided by different models. National Guidelines, standard operating procedures, protocols and other necessary job aides must followed and the HTC service must be regularly supervised.

One of the main objectives in HIV testing and counseling is to identify and link HIV positive persons to care and treatment services and HIV negative people to prevention services. Referral and linkage of clients must get necessary attentions to maximize the number of identified HIV infected persons that are linked to available care and treatment services in the country.

2.1.1. Guiding Principles

All forms of HIV testing and counseling should be voluntary and adhere to the five C’s: consent, confidentiality, counseling, correct test results and connections to care, treatment and prevention services.

- Consent: People receiving HIV testing and counseling must give informed verbal consent to be tested and counseled. Written consent is not required. They should be informed of the process for HIV testing and counseling and their right to decline testing.

- Confidentiality: HIV testing and counseling services are confidential, meaning that what the HIV testing and counseling provider and the person discuss will not be disclosed to anyone else without the expressed consent of the person being tested. Counselors should rise, among other issues, whom else the person may wish to inform and how they would like this to be done. Shared confidentiality with partner or family members and trusted others and with health care providers is often highly beneficial.

- Counseling: HIV testing and counseling services must be accompanied by appropriate and standardized pre-test information and posttest counseling.
• Correct: HIV testing and counseling providers should strive to provide standardized testing services to reach to correct diagnosis.

• Connection: Connections to prevention care and treatment services should include the provision of effective referral to appropriate follow-up services as indicated, including long-term prevention care and treatment services.

2.1.2. Service Delivery Approaches

There are two major HIV testing and counseling service delivery models and under these models there are different service delivery approaches.

These are health facility based HIV testing and counseling model and community based HIV testing and counseling model

A. Facility Based HTS

Currently both VCT and PITC are the approaches being implemented in health facilities to deal with HIV testing and counseling services. Generally, the HIV testing and counseling approaches in health facilities are:

1. Client initiated HIV testing and counseling (VCT) which can be stand alone or other health services integrated

2. Provider initiated HIV testing and counseling (PITC) which is provided by opt-out approach at clinical service points for eligible patients who come to the facility for other medical reasons
   - All public and private facilities should provide HIV testing and counseling services.
   - All health facilities should provide couple HTS
   - Using the national testing algorithm, all health facilities should provide PITC service for eligible clients at outpatient and inpatient departments
Eligible clients for routine HIV testing and counseling by using PITC approach are

1. All pregnant women with unknown HIV status and their partners
2. All laboring mothers with unknown HIV status and their partners
3. All postpartum mothers with unknown HIV status and their partners
4. Presumptive TB Cases
5. All TB patients with unknown HIV status All STI patients with unknown HIV status, their partners and Sexual networks
6. Family members of index PLHIV
7. Sexual networks of PLHIV
8. All under five children visiting HF
9. Children Orphaned by AIDS and vulnerable* children
10. Children with malnutrition
11. Family planning clients with identified risk of history for multiple sexual partner & inconsistent condom use for HIV and their partners
12. Vulnerable*adolescent/youth clients (15-24 years),
13. Clients coming with clinical signs and symptoms of HIV/AIDS visiting health facilities at OPD and Wards
15. Commercial sex workers and their partner, refuges, inmate, long distance truck drivers, mobile workers, daily laborers
16. Widowed, divorced & remarried.

*Vulnerable adolescents includes those living in the street, orphans, adolescents in child headed household, girls engaged in sex with older men or in multiple & concurrent sexual partnership, out of school youth & adolescent who are sexually exploited.

On public health grounds, mandatory and compulsory HIV testing and counseling are forbidden in Ethiopia. Therefore, health facilities and healthcare providers must refrain themselves from testing and counseling individuals without their will and consents. Mandatory testing is allowed in Ethiopia only for screening purposes of blood and blood components for transfusion, in cases of organ transplantation and by order of court case.

B. Community Based HTS
Community based model is one approach of addressing eligible clients who don’t appear at health facilities for HIV testing and counseling for different reasons. This model builds public trust and also mitigates issues related to stigma and discrimination. HTC relieve clients from transportation and other expenses. It has also importance to identify HIV positive earlier than facility based approach as well as reaching populations that services provided at community level can break existing barriers to HIV testing and counseling. In Ethiopia community based model of HIV testing and counseling is recommended at the following settings:

- **Home-based testing targeting specific sub-population group**
  - Families of Index HIV cases
  - Widowed, Divorced, remarried
  - AIDS orphans

- **Targeted outreach HIV testing and counseling services.** Targeting specific geographic areas with high HIV prevalence (hot-spots). While planning outreach HTC, effective linkage of the identified HIV infected clients is very critical. Targeted Outreach testing could be implemented to reach:
  - Commercial sex workers
  - Long distance truck drivers
  - Mobile workers,
  - Daily laborers
  - Clients of sex workers
  - Refuges and Inmate

- **Work place HTC** is recommended with high number of eligible persons for HIV testing and counseling. Some of the eligible work places where community based model of HIV testing and counseling services are:
  - Big farms with huge number of regular and temporary workers
  - Big construction sites (roads, dams for irrigation hydro-electric etc.)
  - Big factories and mining sites

Mixed service delivery approach will be used especially in cases of mobile populations and Mega project sites.
2.1.3. Procedures of HTS delivery

Figure-2.1 Provider inititated counseling and testing protocol with workflow.

Same day results should be respected at all times irrespective of the type of HTS delivery approach. VCT and PITC service providers should follow the national HTS guideline, protocol, cue-card and job-aids while providing HTS.

a. Client registration
At VCT service delivery points clients will be registered using unique identifiers (code numbers) however at PITC service delivery points provider can use the patient’s medical registration number (MRN).

b. Pre-test Information
Pre-test information should be provided by VCT counselor using the cue-card. Couples should be encouraged to receive results together
Pre-test information for PITC can be provided in the form of individual or group information sessions.

The relevant information that should be provided includes:

- The reasons why HIV testing and counseling is being recommended.
- The clinical and prevention benefits of individual and couple testing
- The available services in the case of either -negative or -positive test result, including availability of ART.
- The confidentiality of result other than health care providers directly involved in providing services to the patient
• The right to decline the offered test and declining an HIV test will not affect the patient's access to other medical services
• The right of the client to ask the health care provider any concern or questions.

c. Informed consent
Informed consent should always be given as a verbal consent as individual or couple privately. For pediatric age group (less than 15 years of age) the parents or guardian of the child need to consent verbally. Mature minors (13-15 year age) can give verbal consent by themselves.

Unconscious or patient who is not in status of self-consent should not be tested for HIV unless the clinician determines it necessary to establish diagnosis and make treatment decisions. The most senior clinician or counselor in the institution should be consulted before testing such patient. The patient’s next of kin should be counseled and supported before HIV testing is carried out and afterwards to understand the results and cope with the impact. Consent of kin should be obtained during counseling and service provider should act accordingly.

d. HIV Testing
To improve the acceptability, uptake & quality of service delivery for HTC, for all settings rapid diagnostic tests (RDTs) should be used. These testing strategies have been developed assuming that all HIV assays used have a sensitivity of at least 99% and a specificity of at least 98%, resulting in an overall positive predictive value of 99%.

The HIV testing must be done using national accepted RDTs following national HIV testing algorism.

e. Providing HIV test results
Test results should be declared in person (not by telephone, e mail or letter). HCT sites should not provide written HIV test results to clients to avoid misuse of results. Clients requesting or requiring referral to other facility should be referred to the appropriate institution with pertinent information.

f. Post-test counseling
All clients undergoing HIV testing should be provided with post-test counseling in person (as individual or couple): The form of the post-test counseling session depends on the test result; For positives, sessions will focus on meaning of HIV positive result, coping with the test result, providing information on test & start, importance of medical care and treatment, disclosure and partner testing, prevention messages, positive living & referral for care and treatment.

The post-test counseling session for negatives should include meaning of test result, risk-reduction plan to remain negative and importance of partner testing.
In situations where the counselor does not perform the test, results should be sent to the requesting counselor/service provider, and not disclosed to clients. All sites providing HCT services -VCT or PITC- should ensure counselors follow the standardized protocol to provide post-test counseling.

g. Disclosure of HIV test results to other people:
All clients, positive or negative, should be empowered to inform their sexual partner/s of their test result. When HIV-positive clients are reluctant or fearful to disclose their results, the counselor should provide additional counseling to help the client to disclose the test result and bring the partner for testing. If a client fails to disclose after repeated documented counseling sessions (2-3 within two weeks) and the counselor feels that the partner is at risk of infection, he/she should consult the supervisor or immediate management staff for further action including revealing the result.

Disclosing HIV status to children is a process. Counselors should be encouraged to answer children’s questions truthfully from early age. Information should be given in a way a child can understand at a pace s/he can cope with according to their cognitive and emotional maturity.

Refer: Pediatric disclosure section.

h. Follow-up counseling
After counseling a client on test results, counselors should take opportunity to review or share information that may not have been absorbed by clients within a week. Emphasis should be placed on prevention of further transmission, referrals to other services, involvement of partners and family members, coping mechanisms and identifying available support services and resources.
2.1.4. Retesting

There is a need to reduce unnecessary re-testing among persons who have previously been tested and learnt their results. Most people do not require re-testing to validate an HIV-negative result. However, it is important to accurately identify persons who do require re-testing. Such persons include those whose initial test results were indeterminate, those who tested negative but are at ongoing risk for acquiring HIV (e.g. due to high-risk behaviors) and those who may be in the early stages of infection and have not yet developed a sufficient level of antibodies that can be detected by serological testing (‘window period’).

**Repeat testing** – Refers to a situation where additional testing is performed for an individual immediately following a first test during the same testing visit due to inconclusive or discordant test results; the same assays are used and, where possible, the same specimen.

**Retesting** – Refers to a situation where additional testing is performed for an individual after a defined period of time for explicit reasons, such as a specific incident of possible HIV exposure within the past three months, or ongoing risk of HIV exposure such as risky sexual exposure. Re-testing is always performed on a new specimen and may or may not use the same assays (tests) as the one at the initial test visit.
I. Re-testing is recommended for persons who tested negative but have an ongoing risk:

1. Occupational exposure or sexually assaulted client who started PEP, retest at 6 weeks, 3 months and 6 months
2. Pregnant women, who have tested HIV negative in the first/second trimester of pregnancy; retest during third trimester or labor or postpartum
3. Have an STI: after 3 months
4. Have continuing or ongoing risk of acquiring HIV (MARPs); every 12 months but for female sex workers consider retesting every six month
5. Have specific incidents of known HIV exposure within the past three months, after 3 months
6. Discordant Couple, retest after 6-12 month

II. Retesting before initiating of ART

It is required that all clients linked to care and treatment services need to have a repeat HIV testing done before treatment is initiated. Retesting aims to rule out possible technical or clerical errors; including specimen mix-up through mislabeling and transcription errors, as well as random error either due to the provider or the test device.

Retesting a person diagnosed to be HIV positive to verify the diagnosis should include:

- Take a new specimen for each newly and previously diagnosed individual, preferably conducted by a different provider using the current testing algorithm, prior to initiation of ART;
- Retesting that is preferably conducted at a different site/unit, ideally the site where the decision about ART initiation will be made. Retesting should be done in ART clinic or other unit designated and monitored by the ART clinic. For PMTCT, where there are providers other than who did the first test, retesting could be done at the PMTCT unit, otherwise do the retest in the ART or in the unit designated by ART Clinic.
- If the retesting result is negative, the client should be referred to the facility laboratory. If the facility does not have laboratory, the client should be referred and linked to the nearest facility where there is laboratory service.
• Testing at L&D for pregnant mother with unknown status will be done. If positive, provide ART for the mother and ARV prophylaxis for the infant. After delivery, perform retesting and if the positive test is verified, continue ART; If negative, send the mother to facility laboratory or nearest facility where there is laboratory service.

If the HIV status is the same upon retesting, the person’s HIV-positive status should be considered as verified and initiated on ART.

Retesting people on ART is not recommended. The effect of ART in suppressing viral replication may extend to suppression of the immune response and therefore reduction of antibody production will be there. Once a person is started on ART, low antibody titers make it challenging to discern whether an individual is indeed HIV positive and this will lead to potential risks of incorrect diagnosis.

2.2. HIV testing and counseling in specific populations

a. Couples and partners

Testing the partners of people with HIV is an efficient and effective way of identifying additional people with HIV, who also can benefit from treatment. Participating in couples and partner HTS has a number of benefits. These include adoption of prevention strategies by the couple (for example, condom use, immediate ART), safer conception, improved uptake of and adherence to practices for PMTCT as well as to one’s own ART (thus reducing transmission risk as well as morbidity and mortality). Partner testing is an efficient and effective way of identifying additional people with HIV, who also can benefit from treatment. Couples and partner HTS help more people know their HIV status, particularly men, who in generalized epidemic settings are substantially less likely to test than women.

Couples and partner HTS can be conducted in various settings, including ANC and community-based TB services, through home-based HTS and during premarital health visits. People attending ART services can be encouraged to bring their partners to be tested. As with all HTS approaches, couples and partner HTS should be voluntary. Informed consent should be obtained from all individuals receiving HIV testing. Providers must be aware of the potential for intimate partner violence and should support people’s decisions not to test with their partners. Currently, the prevalence of serodiscordance is estimated at one-half to two-thirds of cohabitating couples or partners where one partner has HIV. Nonetheless, many people do not know their partner’s HIV status.

Couples and partner HTS should be made available for partners of people with HIV and people from MARPS.
Recommendations

- Couples and partners should be offered HIV testing services with support for mutual disclosure.
- Couples and partners in antenatal care settings should be offered HIV testing services with support for mutual disclosure.
- HIV testing services with support for mutual disclosure should be offered to all individuals whose partners have HIV.

b. Pregnant and postpartum women

Provider-initiated testing and counselling for pregnant women and linkage to prevention and care are needed to promote the mother’s health and prevent new pediatric infections.

Recommendations

- Provider-initiated testing and counseling is recommended for women as a routine component of the package of care in all antenatal, childbirth, postpartum and pediatric care settings.
- Re-testing is recommended in the third trimester, or during labor or shortly after delivery, because of the high risk of acquiring HIV infection during pregnancy.

c. Infants and children

Mortality is very high among untreated infants infected with HIV in the first year of life, making early HIV testing, prompt return of results and rapid initiation of treatment essential. Final diagnosis (or definitive diagnosis) at the end of the risk period for mother to-child transmission (breastfeeding period) should be ensured. For children 18 months of age and older (who are not being breastfed or who stopped breastfeeding for at least six weeks), standard HIV serological tests such as rapid diagnostic tests can be used to reliably determine HIV infection status.
**Recommendations**

It is strongly recommended that:

- HIV testing and counseling should be offered to all under five children visiting health facilities.

- All HIV-exposed infants must have HIV virological testing at six weeks of age or at the earliest opportunity thereafter.

- For infants with an initial positive virological test result, it is strongly recommended that ART be started without delay and, at the same time, a second specimen be collected to confirm the initial positive virological test result.

- Children 18 months of age or older with suspected HIV infection or HIV exposure, have HIV serological testing performed according to the standard diagnostic HIV serological testing algorithm used in adults.
**NB:** If the first test is positive and the confirmatory virological test is negative, a third test will be needed to resolve the discordance between the two earlier virological tests (WHO recommendations on the diagnosis of HIV infection in infants and children, 2010).

Figure 2.2 Algorithm for testing of HIV Exposed Infants <18 months
d. Vulnerable Adolescents

Vulnerable adolescents are often underserved and given insufficient priority in many HIV programs, with poor access to and uptake of HIV testing and counseling and linkage to prevention and care. Adolescents with HIV include those surviving perinatal infection and those newly acquiring infection as they become sexually active or are exposed through sexual assault, and blood transfusions. In generalized epidemic settings, many vertically infected infants are not diagnosed through program for PMTCT and would benefit from earlier HIV diagnosis and treatment. In many settings, adolescent girls and adolescents from key populations are also vulnerable to HIV infection and would benefit from access to acceptable and effective HIV services, including HIV testing and counseling. Mature minors and adolescents above 15 years can access HTC service by giving self-consent.

**Recommendations**

- HIV testing and counseling with other prevention services and linkage to treatment and care is recommended for vulnerable adolescents and youth age 15-24 years
- Vulnerable adolescents be counseled about the potential benefits and risks of disclosure of their HIV status and empowered and supported to determine if, when, how and to whom to disclose

**Most at Risk Populations**

HIV testing and counseling has been provided to key populations since HIV tests were first developed. Both existing and new recommendations for HIV testing and counseling for these most-at-risk and vulnerable groups should emphasize consent and confidentiality as well as ensuring that HIV testing and counseling is part of a comprehensive prevention, care and treatment program. Populations most at risk and vulnerable to HIV infections include but are not limited to: sex workers, mobile workers, in-school youth, uniformed services and inmates.

**Recommendations**

- HIV testing and counseling with other prevention services and linkage to treatment and care should be accessible to MARPS at health facilities and community service model
2.3. Quality Management

Quality HTC can be defined as accessible HTC services that meet the need of clients and providers, in an equitable and acceptable manner, within the available resources and in line with national guidelines.

Quality Assurance

Quality assurance (QA) for HIV testing and counseling refers to periodic assessments of factors that affect the quality of HCT services: issues that need to be addressed while assessing for QA:

- Have the counselors/service provider received basic HTC training packages approved by FMOH?
- Is there enough physical space to provide HCT that ensures privacy of the clients and point of care testing?
- Are basic supplies and provider support tools available to provide HCT services?
- Is the service accessible and affordable to the clients?
- Are clients satisfied with the services?
- Are counseling and testing sessions conducted according to nationally approved protocols?

HTC services should be supervised by well-trained program supervisors on regular basis to ensure HTC service qualities. The roles and responsibilities of the supervisors are:

- To determine if counselors/service providers received standard trainings and refresher courses
- To monitor how well counselors/service providers follow the counseling and testing protocol
- To monitor whether clients feel that their confidentiality is protected and satisfied with the services they are provided
- To make sure that HIV test results are given in person during the post-test counseling session.

Supervision and Quality Assurance for HIV testing:

The supervisory visits for testing standards and bio-safety should assure that:

- The national testing protocol is consistently being followed
- The laboratory operating procedures are being observed
- Infection prevention practice is in place
- Proficiency testing is in place including quality control testing in central laboratory
- A standardized laboratory log book is available and being used
- Technical support on the quality of HTS is in place
Quality control (QC) is a procedure or set of procedures intended to ensure that a performed service adheres to a defined set of quality criteria or meets the requirements of the client.

Quality control of HIV testing

Only test kits validated by the Ethiopian Public Health Institute should be used by counseling and testing sites. Training and supervision of laboratory staff, accurate testing materials that are well stored and have not expired, and good maintenance of laboratory records are essential to quality HIV testing. **External Quality Assessment (EQA)**

For EQA, 10% of negative and 30% of positive samples must be sent to the regional laboratory from sites which perform more than 500 tests per month. For the others, combined on-site evaluations with proficiency testing will be conducted once or twice a year.

Internal Quality control (IQC)

For IQC, trained laboratory technicians in the facility should regularly re-test samples tested by counselors and other lab technicians. Sites failing the proficiency tests need to receive additional technical supervision and support.

### 2.4. Policy, Ethical & Legal considerations for HIV Testing and Counseling

**POLICY AND LEGAL Framework**

The following policy, legal and ethical statements reflect existing Ethiopian HIV/AIDS policy.

**General HTC services**

**Policy objectives:**

To promote and provide standard HCT services to individuals, couples, and community groups of all ages regardless of gender, and especially to vulnerable and high-risk groups.

**Policy Statements**

- HCT services shall be integrated into existing health and social welfare services and promoted in all settings: government, non-governmental, private sector, cooperatives, workplace & faith based organizations.

- HCT services shall be strengthened through effective networking, consultation and collaboration among stakeholders.
• HCT services shall be standardized nationwide and shall be authorized, supervised, supported and regulated by appropriate government health authorities
• Informed consent for testing shall be obtained in all cases, except in mandatory testing
• Adequate pre-test information, pre-test counseling and post-test counseling shall be offered to all clients.
• Test results, positive or negative, shall be declared to clients in person and must be provided with post-test counseling
• No results will be provided in certificate form, however referral will be offered to access prevention, care & treatment.
• Clients’ confidentiality will be maintained at all times. Results can be shared with other persons only at clients’ request or agreement, and with those involved in clinical management of clients. Clients can be referred if required or upon request.
• Mandatory HIV testing is a violation of human rights, only permissible in exceptional cases by order of a court of law. Mandatory testing will be done on all voluntary blood, tissue and organ donors, who shall be informed about HIV testing and given opportunity to learn their test results.
• Provider-initiated testing and counseling (PITC) shall be promoted to all eligible person as part of standard clinical management and care in all health facilities

Couples

Policy Statements
• Couples shall be encouraged to be counseled, tested and receive results together. Partner notification shall be encouraged in cases where one partner receives the results alone
• The privacy and autonomy of the couple and individual must be respected. Informed decisions shall be encouraged among discordant couples to protect negatives and support positives
• Pre-engagement, premarital, and preconception counselling and testing will be promoted.

Women

Policy Statements
• Women shall be routinely offered HCT during pregnancy, labour, post natal and at FP with the right to refuse testing.
Children and youth

Policy Statements

• HIV testing for children under the age of 15 shall only be done with the knowledge and consent of parents or guardians, and the testing must be done for the benefit of the child. However children aged 13-15, who are married, pregnant, commercial sex workers, street children, heads of families, or sexually active are regarded as “mature minors” who can consent to HIV testing.

• Persons 15 years and above are considered mature enough to give informed consent for themselves

• In some special cases, such as child adoption, a counselor may refuse a testing request when not in the best interest of the child
  • Children who have been sexually abused and put at risk of HIV infection shall receive counseling, be encouraged to test for HIV and helped to access appropriate services
  • The result of HIV testing is the property of the child tested and shall not be disclosed to third parties unless clearly in the best interest of the child
  • Youth-friendly counseling and testing services shall be made widely available for youth population.

Physically disabled and mental impaired individuals

People with physical disabilities and mental impairment require special care when providing counselling and testing services, particularly regarding communication.

Policy Statements

• HCT service shall accommodate the special needs of people with visual and hearing impairments by adopting appropriate media of communication

• Individuals under the immediate influence of alcohol or addictive drugs (substance use) shall not be offered HIV testing due to a mental inability to provide informed consent

• HCT for a mentally impaired individual requires the knowledge and consent of his/her guardian, and should be for the benefit of the individual or patient.
Ethics in Counseling

Policy Statements

- All service providers shall abide by the rules, regulations and protocols contained in this document and other related national guidelines
- All service providers shall observe the ethical requirements of confidentiality, informed consent, proper counseling, anonymity and privacy.
- Shared confidentiality shall be promoted as an avenue to demystify and de-stigmatize HIV/AIDS

2.5. Linking people diagnosed with HIV infection

It is critical for people living with HIV to enroll in care as early as possible. This enables both early assessment of their eligibility for ART and timely initiation of ART as well as access to interventions to prevent the further transmission of HIV, prevent other infections and co-morbidities and thereby to minimize loss to follow-up.

Good practices for linkage to care from HTC sites
The following are recommended good practices to improve linkage of HIV positive person to care and treatment services after the person is found positive at all HTC service sites

Implement standardized service delivery system that will improve referral and linkage between HCT and HIV chronic care through the following recommended priority interventions:

- Prepare SOP for inter and intra- facilities service outlets referral linkage system
- Establish site level support groups to improve escorting and feedback practices for intra-facility referral
- Mapping and establishing network between available HCT, chronic care, and other support services in the area (Linkage service directory)

Standardize documentation, reporting system and feedback practice the Priority Interventions are

- Harmonize site level HTS and chronic care registers, reporting formats, referral and feedback formats (in line with HMIS)
• Ensure the availability and sustainability of recording and reporting formats
• Ensure a referral and linkage feedback mechanism in health facility

Ensure standardization of HCT guidelines and training materials on referral and linkages issues, the priority interventions are:
• Ensure utilization of both VCT and PITC implementation manuals with referral and linkage issues

Improve the involvement of Health Extension Workers (HEW), PLHIVs in awareness creation activities as to improve referral and linkages through Priorities interventions
• Support HEWs in their day to day IEC/BCC activities in relation to HIV
• Establish and strengthen PLHIV associations and support groups to be involved on the facilitation of referral and linkage through escorting and other mechanisms

Reduce stigma and discrimination through community involvement the Priority interventions
• Develop IEC/BCC material focusing on stigma and discrimination
• Advocate gender inequality that predisposes to stigma and discrimination
• Increase media utilization focusing on stigma and discrimination
• Take a visible leadership role in community activities to address stigma and discrimination through contextual available values and norms of the community
• Identify and analyze the root cause of stigma and discrimination
• Involve PLHIV to reduce stigma and discrimination and to be part of prevention and care services.

Promote health seeking behavior and encourage HIV positive people for service utilization through Priority interventions
• Educate clients on benefits of chronic care and other misconception
• Involve local officials, political leaders, community and Faith based organization leaders to advocate the advantage of standard referral and linkage
- Involve HEWs and other sectors such as agricultural extension workers, education workers, youth associations, women’s associations, PLHIV and etc. are aware of the problem of referral and linkage and collaborate to resolve it.

Adopt and implement innovative approaches using information technology to improve referral linkage.

- eHealth/mHealth: call or text to the client and remind him/her on linkage.

Strengthen Posttest counseling in such a way that the client understands the benefit of ART, develop trust and confidence on the provider and reaches to informed decision on linkage.

Establish facility and catchments area level regular referral linkage auditing system to ensure that all new HIV infected clients are linked to ART.

### 2.6. Post Exposure management including Prophylaxis

#### 2.6.1. Management of occupational exposure to HIV:

- Health care workers and support staff have a low but measurable risk of HIV infection after accidental exposure to infected blood or body fluid.

- Compliance with infection prevention recommendations is the mainstay in prevention of occupational HIV infection. The priorities therefore must be to train health personnel in infection prevention and provide them with necessary materials and protective equipment.

- Risk of HIV infection after a needle stick or cut exposure to HIV-infected blood is estimated to be 0.3% (3 in 1000). Stated another way, 99.7% of needle stick/cut exposures do not lead to infection. The risk of HIV infection after exposure of mucous membranes to HIV-infected blood is estimated to be 0.1% (1 in 1000). However, risk could vary depending on severity of injury and viral load in the source patient.

- Antiretroviral treatment immediately after exposure to HIV can reduce risk of infection by about 80%.

**Set up for post exposure management in health facilities**

- Regular prevention education for employees (health workers, cleaners and other staff involved in institutional care for PLWHA.)
• Ensure availability of control mechanisms for effective observation of Standard Precaution.
• Establish system for post exposure management to ensure urgent attention for victims who have sustained accidental blood exposure

Minimum package for PEP sites
1. Assign one trained physician / Health Officer / nurse as PEP focal person for the facility.
2. The contact address of the facility PEP focal person and the facility ART nurse or any other second person assigned to coordinated PEP activity in the facility should be posted in all Outpatient and inpatient departments within the health facility.
3. PEP starter packs including ARV drugs should be made available in designated sites inside the health facility which may be accessible to all staff, 24 hours and 7 days a week.
4. Provider support tool algorithm for determination of the severity of exposure (Exposure Code) and PEP register should be available in the facility.

Steps to manage potential HIV Exposed person
1. Treat the exposure site / Immediate measures
   - Percutaneous injury or injury to non-intact skin :
     - Washed the exposed site with soap and water as soon as possible, without scrubbing
     - Avoid using Antiseptics
     - Allow free bleeding but don not squeeze the wound.
   - Exposed mucous membranes :
     - Irrigated copiously with clean water or saline
2. Report the exposure :
   - To the PEP focal person or the ART physician or nurse in the facility immediately.
3. The PEP focal person or the ART physician / HO/nurse who needs to do :
   a) Clinical evaluation , counseling and testing of the exposed person and complete the exposure reporting form
   b) Do risk assessment and determine the Exposure code ( EC ) and the Exposure source status code ( HIV SC ) ( use PEP algorithm )
c) Using the Exposure code (EC) and HIV Status code ( HIV SC ) determine whether PEP is warranted for the exposed HCW. ( use PEP algorithm )

d) If the HCW is warranted to take PEP: Chose appropriate PEP regimen, counsel about the ARVDs and prescribe ( use PEP algorithm )

e) Document properly on the PEP follow up register

f) Appoint the exposed person and follow

g) Do all follow up HIV testing at 6 weeks, 12 weeks and 24 weeks, and manage accordingly

Assessment of exposure risk:

Low-risk exposure:
- Exposure to small volume of blood or blood contaminated fluids
- Following injury with a solid needle
- Asymptomatic source patient

High-risk exposure:
- Exposure to a large volume of blood or potentially infectious fluids
- Exposure to blood or potentially infectious fluids from a patient with clinical AIDS or acute HIV infection
- Injury with a hollow needle
- Needle used in source patient artery or vein
- Visible blood on device
- Deep and extensive injury
Table 2.1 Interpretation of exposure code (Severity of Exposure)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Exposure Code</th>
<th>Type of exposure</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 EC 1</td>
<td>Is a minor mucocutanous exposure to small volume of blood for short period (Few Seconds to minutes)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 EC 2</td>
<td>Is a major mucocutanous exposure to large volume of blood for longer duration (Several minutes) or Mild Percutaneous exposure (with Solid needle or superficial scratch or injury)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 EC 3</td>
<td>Severe Percutaneous exposure (Large bore hollow needle, Deep puncture, Visible blood on devise, Needle used in patient artery/vein)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 2.2- Interpretation of the HIV status of the source patient

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>HIV Source code (SC)</th>
<th>The HIV Status and Severity of the illness in the source patients</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 HIV SC 1</td>
<td>The Source patient is HIV Positive but is asymptomatic and has reasonably good immune status</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 HIV SC 2</td>
<td>The Source patient is HIV Positive and is symptomatic, may have AIDS or has other evidence of advanced illness (Low CD4 or High viral load)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 HIV SC unknown</td>
<td>The HIV status of the source patients is unknown (either the patient has refused HIV testing or died or discharged before HIV testing) or The source patient is unknown (e.g. Unlabeled blood sample in a laboratory)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Recommendation of PEP based on Risk assessment

Table 2.3. Recommended HIV post exposure prophylaxis for Percutaneous injuries and Mucous membrane or non-intact skin exposure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Status code</th>
<th>EC 1</th>
<th>EC 2</th>
<th>EC 3</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SC 1</td>
<td>basic 2 drug PEP</td>
<td>basic 2 drug PEP</td>
<td>expanded 3 drug PEP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SC 2</td>
<td>basic 2 drug PEP</td>
<td>expanded 3 drug PEP</td>
<td>expanded 3 drug PEP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SC unknown</td>
<td>No PEP is warranted.</td>
<td>No PEP is warranted</td>
<td>Generally no PEP is warranted</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
consider basic 2-drugs PEP for source with HIV risk factors

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>HIV negative</th>
<th>No PEP warranted</th>
<th>No PEP warranted</th>
<th>No PEP warranted</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Table 2.4 Recommended drugs and administration guide.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ARV drug regimen</th>
<th>Dose</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
<th>Duration</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2-Drug Regimen:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tenofovir (TDF) + Lamivudine (3TC)</td>
<td>TDF 300mg</td>
<td>Once daily</td>
<td>28 days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>or</td>
<td>3TC 300mg</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zidovudine (AZT) + Lamivudine (3TC)</td>
<td>AZT 300mg</td>
<td>12 hourly</td>
<td>28 days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3TC 150mg</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
3-Drug Regimen:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Drug Regimen</th>
<th>Frequency</th>
<th>Duration</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Triple FDC</td>
<td>Tenofovir (TDF) / Zidovudine (AZT) + Lamivudine (3TC) + Efavirenz (EFV)</td>
<td>Once daily</td>
<td>28 days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Or</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Lopinavir/ritonavir (LPV/r)</td>
<td>12hourly</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Or</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Atazanavir/ritonavir (ATV/r)</td>
<td>Once daily</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Timing of initiation of prophylaxis:
To be effective, post-exposure prophylaxis should commence as soon as possible (within 1-2 hours). The maximum delay for initiation of treatment which would prevent infection is not known in humans. Don’t consider PEP beyond 72 hours post exposure. Prophylaxis is to be given for 28 days.

Testing and monitoring after occupational exposure:
- **Testing source:** rapid test is done after counseling and consent has been secured. If the source patient is negative there is no need of further assessment of the exposed health care worker. If the result is positive the health care worker needs to be tested
- **Testing of health care worker:** HIV serology should be performed immediately after exposure. If result is positive there is no need for PEP, but if negative you should administer PEP as soon as possible as outlined above and then repeat serology at 6 weeks, 3 months, and 6 months. Testing of Health Care Workers for possible Hepatitis B infections in line with national viral Hepatitis guideline.

- Remember to initiate PEP immediately after exposure until test result confirms the HIV status of the victim. Stop PEP if the health worker is positive for HIV antibodies
- Following HIV exposure there is a need for psychosocial support

### 2.6.2. Prevention of the transmission of the Human Immunodeficiency Virus (HIV) after sexual assault:

1. All women 15 years and older presenting to a health facility after potential exposure to HIV during sexual assault should be counseled by the examining health care worker about the potential risk of HIV infection.
2. Parents/guardian of traumatized children should be counseled and informed on the risk of HIV infection after sexual assault.
3. The following points should be covered in the counseling:
   a) The exact risk of transmission is not known, but it exists
   b) It is important to know the victim’s HIV status prior to any antiretroviral treatment
   c) It is the patient’s choice to have immediate HIV testing or, if s/he prefers, this can be delayed until 72 hours post examination visit (management guidelines on sexual assault provides for a 3-day starter pack for those who prefer not to test immediately, or those that are not ready to receive results immediately). However, encourage the patient to be tested.
d) PEP is not recommended after 72 hrs following sexual assault. Patients should be counseled about risk of infection and the possibility of transmitting infection during sero-conversion. They should be instructed to return at 6 weeks and 3 months post sexual assault for voluntary counseling and HIV testing.

4. It is strongly recommended that the implementation of post-rape prophylaxis should be carefully monitored and evaluated for:

- Emergency Contraceptives
- Psychosocial and legal support
- Screening for conventional STIs and follow up management
- Drug side effects
- Sero-conversion

PEP is not recommended

a) If victim presents more than 72 hours after exposure

b) Following condom leak or tear

Recommended regimen

AZT Or TDF+3TC+EFV for 28 days.

Alternatively, Kaletra OR Boosted Atazanavir can substitute EFV.

Follow-up of client Exposed to HIV

Post exposure Testing

- A **client** who are taking PEP should be followed in the adult ART clinic

Monitoring and Management of PEP Toxicity
Exposed clients should be reassessed within 3-5 days for medication tolerability and toxicity. If further details about the source become available, a risk assessment re-evaluation may also be appropriate.

Clients taking PEP should be monitored for drug toxicity by testing at baseline and again 2 weeks after starting PEP. The scope of testing should be based on medical conditions in the exposed person and the toxicity of drugs included in the PEP regimen.

Minimally, lab monitoring for toxicity should include a complete blood count and liver function tests.

If toxicity is noted, modification of the regimen should be considered.

2.7. Combination Prevention

HIV prevention approach based solely on one element does not work and can hinder the AIDS response. There is no single magic bullet for HIV prevention. However, a growing number of interventions have shown promise in partially protecting against HIV transmission and acquisition that includes knowledge of sero-status, behavioral risk reduction, condoms, male circumcision, treatment of curable sexually transmitted infections, and use of antiretroviral medications by both HIV-infected and uninfected persons. We need to use a mix of behavioral, biomedical and structural HIV prevention actions and tactics which suit with our country’s actual epidemic. HIV prevention strategies that combine partially effective interventions should be scaled up and evaluated.

Combination HIV prevention is likely to be most effective when different points in the “transmission cycle” are impeded; combining strategies to reduces infectiousness of HIV-positive persons with strategies that reduce HIV susceptibility in the uninfected person. Most early HIV prevention policies focused heavily on HIV-negative, at-risk persons (e.g. using behavior change communication campaigns). However, sero-negative persons represent a very large pool to target for high coverage. Strategies to reduce the infectiousness of HIV positive individuals by reducing secondary HIV transmission should be part of the prevention policy. Theoretically, if high proportions of people living with HIV/AIDS (PLHA) learned their HIV sero-status and adopt interventions such as ART coupled with behavioral risk reduction, this could have a significant impact on HIV transmission.

Core Programmatic Components

Combination approach to prevent includes three types of mutually reinforcing interventions:
1. **Biomedical interventions** are those that directly influence the biological system through which the virus infects a new host, such as Male and female condoms and Voluntary medical male circumcision. Male condoms reduce heterosexual transmission by at least 80%, if used consistently and correctly. Voluntary medical male circumcision reduces acquisition of infection and the risk of acquisition for men by up to 66% and offers a significant lifelong protection.

2. **Behavioral interventions** include a range of sexual behavior change communication programs that use various communication channels (e.g., mass media, community level and interpersonal) to disseminate behavioral messages designed to encourage people to reduce behaviors that increase risk of transmission.

3. **Structural interventions** address the critical social, legal, political, and environmental enablers that contribute to the spread of HIV including legal and policy reform, measures to reduce stigma and discrimination, the promotion of gender equality and prevention of gender-based violence, economic empowerment, access to schooling and supportive interventions designed to enhance referrals, adherence, retention and community mobilization.

**Recommendation**

**Behavioral interventions**

- Peer education
- Outreach activities
- Condom distribution
- Risk reduction Counseling
- Life skills training
- Behavioral change communication (BCC) Materials distribution
- Promotion of health care seeking behaviors through existing services
- Strengthen community based HIV prevention interventions to address the general population through
  - scale-up of quality Community Conversation (CC) and integrate with existing community structures
  - Develop and disseminate HIV prevention messages using print and electronic media.
- Strengthen workplace HIV prevention interventions.
• Strengthen workplace HIV mainstreaming
  • Strengthen school based HIV prevention interventions.
    o Conduct peer education programs in schools, higher education institutes and Technical and Vocational education and training (TVET).
    o Conduct life-skill education in schools, higher education institutes and TVET.
    o Conduct school based CC in high schools, higher education institutes and TVET.
    o Integrate HIV/AIDS into school curriculum.
    o Train teachers on management of school HIV/AIDS programs.
    o Develop and disseminate targeted BCC message in schools, higher education institutes and TVET.
    o Strengthen youth leadership development programs.
    o Develop an HIV intervention strategy for school and higher education.
    o Strengthen anti-AIDS clubs in schools, and higher education institutes and TVETs.
    o Ensure active participation/ membership of students in anti-AIDS clubs of schools in higher education institutes and TVET.
  • Scale-up comprehensive prevention interventions addressing key populations.
  • Strengthen out-of-school youth HIV prevention programs.
  • Intensify HIV prevention in development schemes including new business opportunity locations.
    o Target business opportunity locations, industries and private development schemes.
    o Integrate HIV prevention in the project proposals of development schemes.
    o Develop and disseminate targeted HIV/AIDS messages.
    o Conduct peer education.
    o Referral and linkages with health facilities for VCT, STI and ART services.
    o Ensure HIV prevention among development schemes/projects areas communities.
  • Scale-up HIV prevention among population groups with special needs.
    o Integrate BCC interventions in youth centers for people with disability.
    o Develop and disseminate BCC materials for people with special needs.

**Biomedical interventions**

• Ensure access and enhance uptake of HIV counseling and testing services to eligible patients
• Ensure access and enhance uptake of PMTCT services
  o Strengthen the integration of PMTCT with MNCH in all health facilities.
  o Mobilize the community to be actively involved in PMTCT.
  o Promote PIHCT for all pregnant women attending ANC and delivery services.
  o Ensure male involvement in PMTCT service.
  o Promote PMTCT by the health development armies.
  o Provide education to households on PMTCT by health development armies.
  o Expand PMTCT services.
  o Provide PMTCT training for service providers to people with disability.
  o Involve private health facilities to provide PMTCT services.

• Increase availability and utilization of STI services
  STI services need to be revitalized in all health facilities through implementation of syndromic
  case management.
  o Create strong leadership for STI programs.
  o Expand STI services to all health facilities.
  o Intensify health education to improve treatment seeking behavior and utilization
    of STI services.
  o Promote and implement active STI partner notification system to identify and link
    those in the sexual network to STI management and HTS.
  o Ensure availability of drugs and reagents in all public health facilities.
  o Train health care workers on syndromic STI case diagnosis and management.
  o Provide STI training for service providers to provide user-friendly services to
    people with disability.

• Friendly health services
• Increase supply, distribution and utilization of male and female condoms
  o Ensure adequate supplies of condoms.
  o Conduct targeted condom distribution, particularly to MARPs.
• Ensure infection prevention and safe blood supplies in Health system
• Avail post exposure prophylaxis (PEP) treatment
• Accelerate male circumcision in areas needed
• Intensifying positive prevention
Structural Interventions

- Community mobilization and awareness through Health development army
- Access to health services
- Address socio-cultural factors
  - Address harmful traditional practices that fuel HIV/AIDS.
- Address stigma discrimination
- Reduce economic vulnerability
  - Provide IGA support to vulnerable women.
- Legal & Policy Environment (Legal support system and partnership)
- Promote gender equality and prevention of gender-based violence
- Supportive interventions designed to enhance referrals, adherence, retention and community mobilization
- Mainstream HIV/AIDS prevention activities in to workplace

2.8. Care of HIV exposed infants

Introduction

Infants born to HIV positive pregnant women by definition are HIV exposed and these infants can be infected with HIV during pregnancy, labor or after birth through breast feeding. All HIV exposed infants (infected and non-infected) will test antibody positive during the first few months of life. While the child with HIV infection can often be identified during the first months of life, HIV infection often cannot be excluded until after 1 year of age particularly in breast feeding babies. Pediatric HIV disease can progress very rapidly and may require treatment before a positive diagnosis can be confirmed. HIV infected infants are susceptible to many opportunistic infections including PCP, TB and other bacterial infections that are associated with high rates of mortality. In the provision of care for these children, we use the national HIV exposed follow-up card.
Components of clinical care for the HIV exposed infant

1. **History:**

2. **Physical examination:**

3. **Growth assessment:**
   - Growth is the most sensitive clinical indicator of HIV infection in infants and young children.
   - Children with HIV infection are at high risk for poor growth
   - Growth should be monitored closely for all HIV exposed and infected infants

4. **Developmental assessment:** Use developmental check list to assess growth and development

5. **Infant feeding:** Nutrition and feeding history should be assessed regularly.

6. **Immunization:** All HIV exposed infants should be immunized according to EPI recommendations

Table 2.3: Immunization schedule for HIV exposed infants.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Vaccine</th>
<th>Age</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Birth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BCG</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oral Polio</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DPT-HepB-Hib</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pneumococcal vaccine (PCV)</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rota</td>
<td>X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Measles</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Infants with symptomatic HIV should not receive BCG vaccine

7. **ARV prophylaxis:**
   - NVP should be given to all babies born to HIV infected mothers
     - Give NVP syrup to the baby once daily for the first six weeks of life
     - For HIV exposed infants identified after birth (through infant or maternal
HIV antibody testing)

- Infant on breastfeeding:
  - Initiate ART for the mother
  - Provide NVP syrup for the infant for 6 week (consider extending it for 12 weeks) Refer table 3.6.
  - Collect specimen for DNA PCR testing at 6 weeks of age

- Infant not breast feeding
  - Initiate ART for the mother based on eligibility criteria
  - If the infant is brought within 72 hours of birth provide Nevirapine prophylaxis otherwise there is no need to provide NVP syrup for the infant
  - Collect specimen for DNA PCR testing at 6 weeks of age(Refer algorism for testing of HEI less than 18 months)

Table 2.4 – Dosage of NVP syrup for different age groups

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infant age</th>
<th>NVP daily dosing</th>
<th>Dose in ml</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Birth to 6 weeks</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Birth weight 2000-2499 g</td>
<td>10mg once daily</td>
<td>1ml</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Birth weight &gt;=2500 g</td>
<td>15 mg once daily</td>
<td>1.5ml</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Age 6 weeks to 6 months</td>
<td>20 mg once daily</td>
<td>2ml</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Age 6 months to 9 months</td>
<td>30 mg once daily</td>
<td>3ml</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Age &gt; 9 months</td>
<td>40 mg once daily</td>
<td>4ml</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- NVP concentration is 50mg/ml.
- Dose listed in the table is given once daily
- Follow the manufacturer's instruction for the duration of use following opening. The bottle should be labeled with the date on which it was 1st opened.
- Low birth weight infants (<2000mg) should receive mg/kg dosing, suggested dose is 2 mg/kg once daily.
• NVP infant dose: The oral syringe should not be placed directly into the bottle. Infant dose should be measured by pouring a small amount of NVP syrup into a cup, and then draw the actual dose with oral syringe. Discard the leftover suspension in the cup.

• Dosing beyond 6 weeks of age in special situations in which prolonged dosing of up to 12 weeks should be considered (such as the mother having had limited ART and not being likely to be virally suppressed; the infant is identified as HIV exposed after birth and is breastfeeding).

8. Co-trimoxazole preventive therapy (CPT)

Using pediatric co-trimoxazole in ALL HIV EXPOSED INFANTS significantly reduces the rate of PCP and other bacterial infections and in turn reduces infant morbidity and mortality rates. Start co-trimoxazole to all HIV exposed infants from 6 weeks of age. CPT for HIV exposed infants should be continued until the child is confirmed not to have HIV infection using antibody test after 18 months of age.

9. TB risk assessment

At each visit the infant should be evaluated for Tuberculosis. We need to ask for household exposure with an adult who has tuberculosis and symptoms suggestive of the disease and chest radiograph (CXR) if clinically indicated

10. Determination and evaluation of infection status

One of the goals of follow up of HIV exposed infants is to identify and treat HIV infected ones early. All HIV exposed infants should have virologic testing at 6 weeks of age or at earliest opportunity thereafter.

11. Current assessment and plan

At each visit based on the findings on history, physical examination (that includes growth and development) and/or laboratory investigations, we need to have the assessment of the infant and we should plan our next steps in their management and follow-up.

Follow up visits and schedule

Follow up of HIV exposed infant is recommended to be done monthly for the first six months of life then every 3 months until infection status is determined. See table below for details of follow up schedule and the care components that should be evaluated at each visit.
Table 2.5: Follow up visit schedule for HIV exposed infants

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Age in weeks /months</th>
<th>At birth</th>
<th>6 wk</th>
<th>10 wk</th>
<th>14 wk</th>
<th>5 m</th>
<th>6 m</th>
<th>9 m</th>
<th>12 m</th>
<th>15 m</th>
<th>18 m</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>History</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Physical exam</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Growth Assessme</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Developmental</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infant Feeding</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Determination of HIV status</td>
<td>DNA PCR</td>
<td>Do DNA PCR if the test is not done at 6 weeks**</td>
<td>Perform rapid antibody test at least 6 weeks after cessation of breastfeeding</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

* This is the minimum; children should be seen more frequently if clinically indicated.

** If the infant is between 9-12 months, first do Antibody test and if positive do DBS for DNA.
CHAPTER THREE: CARE AND TREATMENT of PEOPLE WITH HIV INFECTION

It is critical for people living with HIV to initiate ART as early as possible. This enables both shorten the time between HIV diagnosis and ART initiation hence significantly reducing HIV related morbidity and mortality, reducing forward transmission of HIV including MTCT. The chapter will discuss the general packages of care, when& what ARV regimen, Monitoring of treatment response and diagnosis and treatment of treatment failure for first line as well as second line regiment.

3.1. General care packages for PLHIV

As all people living with HIV are eligible for ART and enrolment in care provides an opportunity for close clinical and laboratory monitoring, early assessment for opportunistic infection, comorbidities and timely screening and management of OIs. Many care interventions are relevant across the full continuum of care, including HIV-exposed individuals and people living with HIV before initiation and during ART. The following critical interventions need to be addressed at initial encounter:

- Confirm HIV status by retesting and enrolling in to care(including pre-ART register).
- Ensure any OIs and other clinical problems that may delay initiation are ruled out/addressed.
- Ensure client is committed and ready for early initiation.

NB There will not be a regular pre-ART care service, however, all confirmed HIV patients should be enrolled on the pre-ART register initially and transferred to ART register as they start the ARV.

Key elements of chronic HIV care are:

1. Complete clinical assessment (history taking, complete physical examination and relevant lab tests).
2. Screening and management of opportunistic infection and co-morbidities (See Chapter 4)
3. WHO clinical staging
4. Support for disclosure and partner notification
5. Risk reduction, counseling and combination HIV prevention approaches
3.2. Preparing people living with HIV for ART

Before initiating people on ART, conduct a detailed discussion with them about their willingness and assess their readiness to initiate ART, the ARV regimen, dosage and scheduling, the likely benefits and possible adverse effects and the required follow-up and monitoring visits. For children with HIV, this conversation should directly involve the parent/legal guardian and include discussion about disclosing their HIV status. Initiation of ART should consider nutritional status, any co-morbidities and potentially interacting medications for possible contraindications or dose adjustment.

After going through detailed discussion assess the readiness and offer to initiate ART. Most clients will be ready at most on the second session. Check the following issues to assess readiness of the clients:

- Patient understood the need for life long commitment, appointment schedules
- Patient has accepted the importance of disclosure and family support
- Patient demonstrated good adherence to other medications and appointments
If clients or caretakers differ in initiating ART as early as possible, address the following issues in the subsequent visits:

- Barriers for starting—possibly solutions
- Consequences of delaying initiation
- The implication of treatment for transmission, person’s own health etc
- ARV regimens and schedule of follow-up
- Disclosure to partners/family
- Family testing
- Treatment planning
- Importance and engaging in peer support

NB: Clients who differed initiation need to be seen repeatedly for continued counseling and support to initiate ART.

If there is mental health, substance use or other problems that are major barriers to adherence/initiation, appropriate support should be provided, and readiness to initiate ART should be reassessed at regular intervals. Utilize a range of patient information materials as well as community and peer support can help the person’s readiness and decision to start therapy.

People starting treatment and caretakers should understand that the first ART regimen offers the best opportunity for effective virological suppression and immune recovery, and that successful ART requires them to take the medications exactly as prescribed. They should be advised that many adverse effects are temporary or may be treated, or that substitutions can often be made for problematic ARV drugs. People receiving ART and caretakers should also be asked regularly about any other medications that are taken, including herbal remedies and nutritional supplements.

People receiving ART should understand that; while the ARV drugs reduce the risk of HIV transmission, they cannot be relied on to prevent other people from acquiring infection. They should be given advice on safer sex (including condom use) and avoidance of other high-risk activities, such as sharing of injecting equipment, to prevent transmitting HIV to other people.

In conclusion, the following principles should be considered:

- Treatment should be started based on a person’s informed decision to initiate ART.
Interventions to remove barriers to ART initiation once an individual is diagnosed HIV positive should be implemented.

- HIV programs should promote treatment literacy among all people with HIV, including information on the benefits of early treatment, the lifelong commitment required, the risks of delaying treatment and available adherence support.
- Care providers should support shared decision-making.
- Although ART initiation is rarely urgent, it may need to be expedited in certain circumstances, such as serious ill health and for pregnant women in labor whose HIV test result is positive.

Efforts should be made to reduce the time between HIV diagnosis and ART initiation based on an assessment of a person’s readiness.

3.3. When to Start ART

When to start ART in adults and adolescents

All HIV positives are eligible for ART. The ideal time for ART initiation depends on the clinical condition and readiness of the client. For HIV positive clients who understand and accept the importance of early initiation, initiate ART as early as possible as indicated.

3.3.1. When to start ART in adults (>19yrs)

Early treatment initiation is associated with clinical and HIV prevention benefits, improving survival and reducing the incidence of HIV infection at the family and community level. Start ART as early as possible to all adults with a confirmed HIV diagnosis ready & willing regardless of their WHO clinical stages and CD4 counts.

3.3.2. When to start ART in adolescents(10-19yrs)

Early treatment initiation is associated with clinical and HIV prevention benefits, improving survival and reducing the incidence of HIV infection at community level. Start ART as early as
possible to all adolescent with a confirmed HIV diagnosis regardless of their WHO clinical stages and CD4 counts. As the level of maturity varies, some younger adolescents may need parental consent and support. Prenatally infected adolescents need special consideration.

3.3.3. When to start ART in pregnant and breastfeeding women
Start ART as early as possible to all pregnant & breastfeeding women living with HIV regardless of their WHO clinical stages and CD4 counts. For a women identified at labor & delivery, provide ART the same hour with brief counseling and provide detailed counseling on ARVs & Adherence after delivery. Consequently, provide prophylaxis for the infant for 6 to 12 weeks based on the duration of maternal ART coverage (Refer to HEI section).

3.3.4. When to start ART in children
Start ART as early as possible to all children living with HIV regardless of their WHO clinical stages and CD4 counts/ percentage. Infants and young children infected with HIV have exceptionally higher morbidity & mortality. Up to 52% and 75% of children die before the age of two and five years respectively in the absence of any intervention.
For HIV infected infants diagnosed with the first DNA PCR result, Initiate ART and take DBS specimen for confirmatory DNA PCR. Continue ART, if the second DNA PCR confirms continue ART, whereas if the second DNA PCR turns negative, without holding the ART make the 3rd DNA PCR test.(refer algo)
For HIV infected Infants and younger children who need particular care & support from parents and care givers, ensure the readiness and understanding of their parents and care givers. HIV infected infants shall be started on ART and counseling on dosage and administration will be provided for parents.

3.3.5. When to start ART in adults, adolescents and children with TB
Start ART in all TB patients living with HIV as soon as possible within 8 weeks following initiation of Anti TB treatment regardless of their CD4 count. TB patients with profound immune suppression (e.g., CD4 < 50cells/ml) should receive ART within the first 2 week of initiation of TB treatment. Initiating ART within 2 weeks in profoundly immunocompromised patients after initiation of Anti TB treatment significantly reduces mortality. Start CPT for TB/ HIV co-infected patients (refer Chapter 4 on OI TB section).
3.3.6. When to start ART in adults, adolescents and children with **DR-TB**

Antiretroviral therapy is recommended for all patients with HIV and drug-resistant TB (both MDR/XDR-TB) requiring second-line anti-tuberculosis treatment, irrespective of CD4 cell count, as early as possible (within the first eight weeks) following initiation of anti-tuberculosis treatment.

Unrecognized drug-resistant TB (DR-TB) is associated with very high mortality in people with HIV, hence, Xpert MTB/RIF is recommended as the initial diagnostic test in all PLHIV with presumptive TB. Patients with both HIV and DR-TB face complicated clinical management, fewer treatment options and poorer treatment outcomes. The complexity of ARV regimens and second-line TB treatment, each with its own toxicity profiles and some of which may be potentiated by concomitant therapy, demands rigorous clinical monitoring, and early recognition and management of adverse drug reactions. PLHIV with DR-TB should receive both second-line anti-TB and ART in DR-TB treatment initiating centers, and close collaboration between health facility MDR-TB TIC and HIV care clinic is strongly recommended for early initiation of ART and optimal management of these patients. (Refer section XXX; and National TB guidelines).

3.3.7. When to start ART in HIV/HBV co-infected adults

Start ART in all HIV/HBV co-infected patients regardless of their CD4 count. The preferred regime for first line ART (TDF+3TC+EFV) is already the treatment for HBV. If TDF is contraindicated for First line regimen refer the client to specialist for consultation.

Table 3.1 Summary of recommendations on when to start ART in adults, adolescents, pregnant and breastfeeding women.

ART should be initiated for all individuals (children, adolescents and adults) living with HIV immediately after confirming HIV diagnosis, regardless of WHO clinical stage and CD4 cell count.
3.4. What ART regimen to start with (first-line ART)

Using simplified, less toxic and more convenient regimens as fixed-dose combinations is recommended for first-line ART. Once-daily regimens comprising NRTI backbone (TDF + 3TC) and one NNRTI (EFV) are maintained as the preferred choices in adults, adolescents and children older than ten years. For children younger than three years a PI-based regimen is the preferred approach (Table 3.3).

Table 3.3:- Summary of first-line ART regimens for adults, adolescents, pregnant and breastfeeding women and children

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Population</th>
<th>Preferred first Line regimens</th>
<th>Alternative First Line regimens&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Adults (including pregnant and breastfeeding women and adults with TB co-infection))</td>
<td>TDF + 3TC + EFV(FDC)</td>
<td>AZT + 3TC + EFV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>AZT + 3TC + NVP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>TDF + 3TC + NVP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adolescents (10 to 19 years) ≥35 kg</td>
<td>AZT + 3TC + EFV</td>
<td>AZT + 3TC + NVP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ABC + 3TC + NVP</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ABC + 3TC + EFV</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Children 3 years to less than 10 years and adolescents &lt;35 kg</td>
<td>AZT/ABC + 3TC + EFV</td>
<td>ABC + 3TC + NVP**</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>AZT + 3TC + NVP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>TDF + 3TC + EFV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>TDF + 3TC + NVP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Children &lt;3 years</td>
<td>ABC or</td>
<td>ABC + 3TC + NVP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>AZT + 3TC + LPV/r</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>AZT + 3TC + NVP</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
<sup>a</sup>ABC or boosted PIs (ATV/r, LPV/r) can be used in special circumstances.

** Caution: co-administration of ABC with NVP in pediatric patients will increase the risk of hypersensitivity reaction and requires extreme precaution.
3.4.1. First line ART for adults and adolescents

A once daily fixed dose combination of TDF + 3TC + EFV is recommended as first-line ART in Adults and Adolescents. In older patients with long-term diabetes, uncontrolled hypertension and renal failure, select appropriate drug from the alternative regimen. In patients with depression with suicidal ideation and previous history of acute psychosis, use alternative regimen and avoid EFV.

3.4.2. First-line ART for pregnant and breastfeeding women and ARV prophylaxis for their infants

A once-daily fixed-dose combination of TDF + 3TC + EFV is recommended as first-line ART in pregnant and breastfeeding women, including pregnant women in the first trimester of pregnancy and women of childbearing age.

The infant prophylaxis duration based on the total duration of maternal ART coverage. For infants born to HIV infected women who took ART for more than 4 weeks at time of delivery, give NVP prophylaxis for 6 weeks. For infants born to mothers covered with ART for less than 4 weeks or for who is diagnosed at birth or postpartum, give extended NVP prophylaxis for the infant for 12 weeks. Infant prophylaxis should begin within 1 hour at birth or when HIV exposure is recognized postpartum.

Table 3.4 Summary of maternal and infant ARV prophylaxis for different clinical scenarios.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Scenario</th>
<th>Maternal ARV prophylaxis(^a)</th>
<th>Infant ARV prophylaxis(^b)</th>
<th>Duration of infant ARV prophylaxis</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mother diagnosed with HIV during pregnancy(^c,d)</td>
<td>Initiate maternal ART</td>
<td>NVP</td>
<td>6 weeks, extend to 12 weeks if mother took ART for &lt;4 weeks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Scenario</td>
<td>Action</td>
<td>ARV</td>
<td>Duration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mother diagnosed with HIV during labor or immediately postpartum and plans to breastfeed</td>
<td>Initiate maternal ART</td>
<td>NVP</td>
<td>12 weeks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mother diagnosed with HIV during labour or immediately postpartum and plans replacement feeding</td>
<td>Refer mother for HIV care and evaluation for treatment</td>
<td>NVP</td>
<td>12 weeks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infant identified as HIV exposed after birth (through infant or maternal HIV antibody testing) and is on breastfeeding</td>
<td>Initiate maternal ART</td>
<td>NVP</td>
<td>12 weeks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Take DBS specimen for DNS PCR for EID same day if infant older than 4weeks.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infant identified as HIV exposed after birth (through infant or maternal HIV antibody testing) and is not breastfeeding</td>
<td>Refer mother for HIV care and evaluation for treatment</td>
<td>No ARV prophylaxis</td>
<td>Take DBS, do DBA PCR test, initiate treatment if the infant is infected</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mother receiving ART but interrupts ART regimen</td>
<td>Determine an alternative ART regimen or</td>
<td>NVP</td>
<td>Until 6 weeks after maternal ART is restarted or</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
while breastfeeding (such as toxicity, stock-outs or refusal to continue) solution; counsel regarding continuing ART without interruption until 1-week after breastfeeding has ended

a. Ideally, obtain the mother’s CD4 cell count at the time of initiating or soon after initiating ART
b. If infant NVP causes toxicity or NVP is not available, 3TC can be substituted.
c. If the mother is using replacement feeding, infant AZT can be substituted for infant NVP; if there is documented maternal viral suppression near delivery for a mother receiving ART and using replacement feeding, four weeks of infant ARV prophylaxis may be considered.
d. If it is known that the mother has initiated ART less than 4 weeks before delivery, consider extending infant NVP for infants who are breastfeeding to 12 weeks.

3.4.3. First-line ART for children

Pediatric ARV formulations should be easy to administer for children at different age groups. There are optimal pediatric ARV formulations including FDCs, dispersible tablets, scored tablets, pellets, etc. These formulations are appropriate for various age and weight bands. (see dose in the annex). Dosage of ARV for children should be progressively changing as the weight of the children increase.

3.4.4. First line ART for Infants and children younger than 3 years

Optimizing first-line ART in children younger than three years is critical to achieving effective and rapid control of viral replication in the context of high viral load and rapid infant growth. Considerations that may require alternative therapeutic approaches include the limited availability of drugs in appropriate formulations, the long-term toxicities of ARV drugs, difficulty with adherence and the possibility of pre-existing viral resistance because of ARV drug exposure for PMTCT.

For infants and children infected with HIV younger than three years, the NRTI backbone for an ART regimen should be ABC or AZT + 3TC. A LPV/r-based regimen should be used as first-line ART for all children infected with HIV younger than three years (36 months) of age, regardless of NNRTI exposure. If LPV/r is not feasible, treatment should be initiated with a
NVP-based regimen. For infants and children infected with HIV younger than three years, ABC + 3TC + AZT is recommended as an option for children who develop TB while on an ART regimen containing NVP or LPV/r. Once TB therapy has been completed, this regimen should be stopped and the initial regimen should be restarted. (See table 3.5).

3.4.5. First line ART for Children 3 years and older (including adolescents)

For children infected with HIV three years and older (including adolescents), EFV is the preferred NNRTI for first-line treatment and NVP is the alternative. For children infected with HIV three years to less than 10 years old (or adolescents less than 35 kg), the NRTI backbone for an ART regimen should be one of the following, in preferential order ABC + 3TC OR AZT or TDF + 3TC and for adolescents infected with HIV (10 to 19 years old) weighing 35 kg or more, the NRTI backbone for an ART regimen should align with that of adults and be one of the following, in preferential order TDF + 3TC OR AZT + 3TC OR ABC + 3TC. At or above 35 kg, the dose of TDF in adult dual and triple fixed-dose combinations and the dose of EFV in adult triple fixed-dose combinations are acceptable for use in adolescents (Table 3.3).

3.4.6. First line ART for TB Co-treatment in children with HIV

TB is one of the most common opportunistic infections affecting children with HIV. Selecting regimens that are compatible with TB therapy is therefore essential. Interactions between rifampicin and LPV/r or NVP mean that co-treatment in children under three years is challenging, but recent evidences in children has generated preliminary evidence on the efficacy of triple nucleoside therapy which, despite limited data in the context of TB co-treatment, offers a suitable option for children who require TB treatment while already receiving ART. The recommended regimens for children diagnosed with TB and starting ART are consistent with the previous recommendations (Table 3.5). ART should be started as soon as tolerated within 8 weeks of initiating anti-TB.
Table 3.5 Summary of recommended ART regimens for children who need TB treatment (Ref. annex for dosage)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Recommended regimens for children and adolescents initiating ART while on TB treatment a,b</th>
<th>Younger than 3 years</th>
<th>3 years and older</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Two NRTIs + NVP, ensuring that dose is 200 mg/m2 or Triple NRTI (AZT + 3TC + ABC) c</td>
<td>Two NRTIs + EFV or Triple NRTI (AZT + 3TC + ABC) c</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Recommended regimen for children and infants initiating TB treatment while receiving ART

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Child on standard NNRTI-based regimen (two NRTIs + EFV or NVP)</th>
<th>Younger than 3 years</th>
<th>3 years and older</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Continue NVP, ensuring that dose is 200 mg/m2 or Triple NRTI (AZT + 3TC + ABC) c</td>
<td>If the child is receiving EFV, continue the same regimen If the child is receiving NVP, substitute with EFV or Triple NRTI (AZT + 3TC + ABC) c</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Child on standard PI-based regimen (two NRTIs + LPV/r)</th>
<th>Younger than 3 years</th>
<th>3 years</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Triple NRTI (AZT + 3TC + ABC) c or Substitute NVP for LPV/r, ensuring that dose is 200 mg/m2</td>
<td>If the child has no history of failure of an</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
and older

NNRTI-based regimen:
Substitute with EFV\textsuperscript{d}

or

Triple NRTI (AZT + 3TC + ABC)\textsuperscript{c}

or

If the child has a history of failure of an NNRTI-based regimen:

Triple NRTI (AZT + 3TC + ABC)c

Consider consultation with experts for constructing a second line regimen

a. Ensure optimal dosing of rifampicin based on new dosing guidelines

b. Substitute ARV drugs based on an age-appropriate ART regimen in line with nationally recommended first-line ART.

c. Triple NRTI is only recommended for the duration of TB treatment; an age-appropriate PI- or NNRTI-based regimen should be restarted when rifampicin-based therapy ends. Triple NRTI should also be considered as the preferred regimen for children older than 3 years with a history of failure on a NNRTI-based regimen.

d. Substitution with EFV should be considered as the preferred option, and EFV could be maintained after TB treatment ends to enable simplification and harmonization with the ARV drug regimens used for older children.
3.5. Monitoring response to ART

Monitoring of patients on ART should start from the day of initiation. Although taking ART is a lifelong commitment, the first six months of therapy are especially important.

3.5.1. What to expect in the first months of ART and how to manage them

Clinical and immunological improvement and biological suppression are expected when individuals adhere to ART, but care providers need to be alert as opportunistic infections and/or immune reconstitution inflammatory syndrome (IRIS) may develop, as well as early adverse drug events, such as drug hypersensitivity, in the first three months of ART. ART significantly decreases mortality and HIV related illnesses, however mortality can be higher in the first three to six months of ART initiation among people starting ART with advanced HIV disease with existing co-infections and/or co-morbidities, severely low hemoglobin, low body mass index(severe malnutrition) and/or very low CD4 counts.

In most adults and children, when ART is initiated and immune recovery starts CD4 cell counts rise. Generally, this increase occurs during the first year of treatment, and then continues to rise further during the second year. However, severe immune-suppression may persist in some individuals who do not experience a significant rise in CD4 cell count with treatment, especially those with a very low CD4 cell count when initiating ART, hence failure to achieve CD4 recovery or presence of CD4 decline should alert the health care provider to potential adherence problems or primary non-response to ART, and consideration should be given to continue prophylaxis for opportunistic infections such as co-trimoxazole preventive therapy till patients recover immunologically.

Immune reconstitution inflammatory syndrome (IRIS)

IRIS is a spectrum of clinical signs and symptoms thought to be associated with immune recovery brought about by a response to ART. It occurs among 10–30% of the people initiating ART, usually within the first 4–8 weeks after initiating therapy. It may present in two different ways: paradoxical IRIS, when an opportunistic infection or tumor diagnosed before ART initially responds to treatment but then deteriorates after ART starts; or unmasking IRIS, in which initiating ART triggers disease that is not clinically apparent before ART. It should be
considered only when the presentation cannot be explained by a new infection, expected course of a known infection or drug toxicity.

The clinical spectrum is diverse, and IRIS has been reported for many different infections, tumors and non-infectious conditions. The most serious and life-threatening forms of paradoxical IRIS are for TB, Cryptococcus’s, Kaposi’s sarcoma and hepatitis. BCG vaccine–associated IRIS (localized and systemic) may occur in some HIV infected infants.

IRIS is generally self-limiting, and interruption of ART is rarely indicated, but people may need to be reassured in the face of protracted symptoms to prevent discontinuation of or poor adherence to ART.

Before initiating ARV, providers need to give due consideration for patients with low CD4+ cell count (<50 cells/mm3) at ART initiation, disseminated opportunistic infections or tumors and a shorter duration of therapy for opportunistic infections before ART starts as they are the main risk factors for IRIS.

The most important steps to reduce the development of IRIS include:

- Earlier HIV diagnosis and initiation of ART before a decline to below 200 CD4 cells/mm3;
- Improved screening for opportunistic infections before ART, especially TB and Cryptococcus; and
- Optimal management of opportunistic infections before initiating ART.

Timing of ART in people with opportunistic infections requires balancing a greater risk of IRIS after early initiation against continuing high mortality if ART is delayed.

Most or all of the following features should be present in order to make the diagnosis:

- A low pretreatment CD4 count (often less than 100 cells/µL) except in tuberculosis. IRIS secondary to preexisting M. tuberculosis infection may occur in individuals with CD4 counts >200.
- A positive immunological response to ART.
- The absence of evidence of drug-resistant infection, bacterial super infection, drug allergy or other adverse drug reactions, patient noncompliance, or reduced drug levels due to drug-drug interactions or malabsorption after appropriate evaluation for the clinical presentation.
- The presence of clinical manifestations consistent with an inflammatory condition and
A temporal association between HAART initiation and the onset of clinical features of illness-usually within the first 6 months

**Management of IRIS**

- Patients should generally be treated for the underlying opportunistic infection as soon as possible
- Continuation of ART when IRIS occurs

Role of anti-inflammatory agents:
Anti-inflammatory agents may be particularly helpful in the setting of obstructive mass lesions (e.g. expanding cervical lymph node).

Use of anti-inflammatory agents, particularly corticosteroids, must be weighed against potential risks and side effects.

When a decision is reached to treat with corticosteroids, initiate therapy with prednisone at a dose of 1 mg/kg/day (maximal dose 60 to 80 mg) followed by a rapid taper over a 10 to 14-day period. IRIS in closed spaces (e.g. CNS OIs) should be managed promptly or referred to appropriate center to avert significant morbidity and mortality.

IRIS is not indicative of treatment failure or drug side effect. It is a transient phenomenon and is not a reason to stop ART or change regimen. The OIs should be treated using standard guidelines and in critically sick patients short course of corticosteroid might be indicated to control severe symptoms

**3.5.2. Clinical and Laboratory monitoring**

CD4 will not be used for monitoring purpose once viral load determination is becoming routine. Standardized clinical assessment of patients and, when available base line CD4 count, are important to determine the severity of immunosuppression and decide on initiation of prophylactic therapies. Before initiating antiretroviral therapy, patients shall be thoroughly evaluated at baseline and periodically for the rest of their lives to monitor toxicity, intolerance, response or failure to treatment. Before ART initiation patient readiness and thereafter adherence to therapy are always assessed and necessary supports need to be provided. Opportunistic
infections including TB, Cryptococci infection and other co-morbidities are always looked for and managed.
Table 3.6: Baseline and Follow up Assessment

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Baseline assessment, week 0</th>
<th>Initial Assessment</th>
<th>Intervention</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Objectives</strong></td>
<td><strong>Activities</strong></td>
<td><strong>Intervention</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Check confirmatory HIV test is done and documented</td>
<td>• Develop impression on treatment readiness</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Adherence counseling and ensure readiness</td>
<td>• Start CPT and IPT if clinically indicated</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Clinical assessment: socio-economic status, any HIV related illnesses in the past, symptom screen for TB, other OIs, co-morbidities, pregnancy, past and current medication.</td>
<td>• Treat OI</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Determine WHO staging</td>
<td>• Manage co-morbidities/refer if necessary</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Register, fill intake format</td>
<td>• Continue ART for transfer-ins</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Counselling and education: adherence, treatment readiness, disclosure, address adherence barriers</td>
<td>• Give appointment to return after 1 week</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Lab assessment(^1):</td>
<td>• Refer if necessary</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>o base line CD4,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>o CBC, ALT, creatinine(if available).</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>o If presumptive TB diagnosis do GeneXpert.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>o Pregnancy and other tests as necessary.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^1\) **ART initiation should not be delayed for the CD4 test, however do the test severity of immunosuppression.**
### 2nd Visit, 1 week after baseline visit

**To decide on Initiation**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Review clinical and lab data</th>
<th>Determine ART treatment readiness</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Adherence counselling and ensure readiness</td>
<td>Start CPT (as indicated) and IPT if not started</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Counseling and education on ART and preventive therapies</td>
<td>Treat OI, Initiate TB treatment if indicated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Encourage disclosure and discuss on treatment support.</td>
<td>Manage any drug toxicity and intolerance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Decide on regimen and initiate ART if ready.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Provide adherence counselling and patient education</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Appointment to return after 2 weeks if ART initiated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Give appointment for those patients who defer early initiation after 1 week for 3(^{rd}) session.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**NB:** *Continue the same session & counseling until the patient is ready & initiated on ART,*

### 3rd Visit, 2 weeks after initiation

**To determine toxicity/intolerance, adherence, and IRIS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Clinical assessment for: IRIS,</th>
<th>Increase/Adjust dose of</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
toxicity etc.
- Assess and support adherence addressing barriers
- Provide counseling and education including prevention
- Lab tests if necessary
- Support disclosure if not done

nevirapine if patient is on NVP regimen.
- Manage toxicity as indicated
- Provide adherence support and patient education including HIV prevention
- Treat OI if diagnosed
- Give appointment to return in 2 weeks

### 4th visit 4 weeks after initiation

Same as third visit

- Same as 3rd visit
- Hg if patient is on AZT
- Assess and support adherence

- Refill ART and other medicine as necessary for one month
- Treatment of OI if identified
- Manage drug toxicity and intolerance
- Provide adherence support and patient education including HIV prevention
- Refer if necessary
- Appointment to return after 4 weeks

### 5th visit 8 weeks after initiation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Same as 4th visit</th>
<th>Same as 4th visit</th>
<th>Refill ART and other drugs as necessary for 1</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>6th visit 12 weeks after initiation</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------------------</td>
<td>--</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Same as 5th visit</td>
<td>Same as 5th visit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>7th visit 16 weeks after initiation</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Same as 6th visit</td>
<td>Same as 6th visit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Treatment of OI & co-morbidities.
- Manage toxicity and intolerance
- Provide adherence support and patient education including HIV prevention
- Refer if necessary
- Appointment to return after 4 weeks

- Refill ART and other drugs as necessary for 1 month
- Treatment of OI
- Manage toxicity and intolerance
- Provide adherence support and patient education including HIV prevention
- Refer if necessary
- Appointment to return after 4 weeks

- Refill ART and other drugs as necessary for 2 months
- Treatment of OI
- Manage toxicity and intolerance
- **Provide adherence support and patient education including HIV prevention**
- **Refer if necessary**
- **Appointment to return after 8 weeks**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>8th visit 24 weeks after initiation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Same as 7th visit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Same as 7th visit</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- **Determine CD4 if viral load testing is not available or patient is on CPT**
- **Determine Viral load**
- **Refill ART and other drugs as necessary for 3 months**
- **Treatment of OI**
- **Manage toxicity and intolerance**
- **Refer if necessary**
- **Appointment to return after 12 weeks**

**NB:**

- CD4 testing may be used to determine discontinuation of OI prophylaxis.
- After the 24th week of initiation of antiretroviral therapy patients are scheduled to return every twelve weeks. At each visit antiretroviral drugs and CPT for three months are given, counseling of positive living, safe sexual practice, adherence assessment and support are done. Lab tests including ALT are requested when indicated.
Patients should be encouraged to come at any time if they have concerns. Clients may be seen out of the above schedule whenever necessary.

At every visit conduct screening for TB

---

Table 3.7 Recommended tests for HIV screening and monitoring and approaches to screening for coinfections and noncommunicable diseases

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Management</th>
<th>Recommended</th>
<th>Desirable (if feasible)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| At HIV diagnosis | • HIV testing (serology for adults and children 18 months or older; EID for children younger than 18 months)  
• Cryptococcus antigen if CD4 cell count ≤100 cells/mm³  
• CD4 cell count  
• TB symptom screening | • HBV (HBsAg) serology\(^a\)  
• HCV serology  
• Cryptococcus antigen if CD4 cell count ≤100 cells/mm³\(^b\)  
• Screening for STIs  
• Pregnancy test to assess if ART initiation should be prioritized to prevent HIV transmission to the child  
• Assessment for major noncommunicable chronic diseases and comorbidities |
| Follow-up for clients who differed ART initiation | • CD4 cell count (every 6–12 months in circumstances where ART initiation is differed) | • |
| ART initiation | • Hemoglobin test for starting AZT\textsuperscript{d} | • Pregnancy test |
| | • Blood pressure measurement | • Serum creatinine and estimated glomerular filtration rate (eGFR) for starting TDF\textsuperscript{c} |
| | • Alanine aminotransferase for NVP\textsuperscript{c} | • Baseline CD4 cell count |
| Receiving ART | • HIV viral load (at 6 months and 12 months after initiating ART and every 12 months thereafter) | • Serum creatinine and eGFR for TDF\textsuperscript{c} |
| | • CD4 cell count if indicated | • Pregnancy test, especially for women of childbearing age not receiving family planning. |

\textsuperscript{a} If feasible, HBsAg testing should be performed at baseline to identify people with HIV and HBV coinfection and who should therefore initiate TDF-containing ART.

\textsuperscript{b} Can be considered in settings with a high prevalence of cryptococcal antigenemia (>3%).

\textsuperscript{c} Consider assessing for the presence of chronic conditions that can influence ART management, such as hypertension and other cardiovascular diseases, diabetes and TB according to the WHO Package of Essential NCD interventions (PEN), mental health Gap Action Programme (mhGAP) or national standard protocols (see section 5.3 “Prevention, screening and management of other comorbidities and chronic care for people living with HIV”). Monitoring may include a range of tests, including serum
creatinine and estimated glomerular filtration rate (eGFR), serum phosphate and urine dipsticks for proteinuria and glycosuria.

Among children and adults with a high risk of adverse events associated with AZT (low CD4 or low BMI).

Among people with a high risk of adverse events associated with TDF: underlying renal disease, older age group, low body mass index (BMI), diabetes, hypertension and concomitant use of a boosted PI or potential nephrotoxic drugs.

Among people with a high risk of adverse events associated with NVP, such as being ART-naive, women with HIV with a CD4 count >250 cells/mm3 and hepatitis C virus (HCV) coinfection. However, liver enzymes have low predictive value for monitoring NVP toxicity.

3.5.3. Monitoring drug toxicities and substitution of ARV.

Guiding principles

- Establish whether the clinical condition is due to ARV toxicities, other drugs, or other illness including new OIs.
- Try to identify the responsible ARV drug.
- Assess the severity using toxicity grading matrix (Annex 5)

Major types of ARV toxicities

The major causes of drug discontinuation in the first 3-6 months after initiating ART are due to drug toxicities; therefore, they must be closely monitored. They occur from few weeks to months. The most frequent drug adverse reactions include:

- Toxicities of NRRTIs (NVP and EFV) occurring in the first few weeks, and may be life-threatening
- ABC hypersensitivity reaction starting from first week following initiation
- Anemia and neutropenia due to AZT occur in the first 3 months

The clinical manifestations due to hypersensitivity reactions (ABC and NVP) may be confused with IRIS. Intolerance to certain drugs, in particular AZT induced gastrointestinal problems, are important barriers to adherence unless appropriate measures are taken.

Table 3.8 Types of toxicities associated with first and second line ARV drugs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ARV Drug</th>
<th>Major types of toxicity</th>
<th>Risk factors</th>
<th>Suggested management</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ABC</td>
<td>Hypersensitivity reaction</td>
<td>Substitute with TDF or AZT for first line, substitute with TDF, for second line.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----</td>
<td>--------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ATV/r</td>
<td>Electrocadiographic abnormalities (PR and QRS interval prolongation)</td>
<td>Pre-existing conduction System disease Concomitant use of other drugs that may prolong the PR interval This phenomenon is clinically benign but potentially stigmatizing. Substitute with LPV/r only if adherence is compromised.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indirect hyperbilirubinaemia (clinical jaundice)</td>
<td>Underlying hepatic disease HBV and HCV co-infection Concomitant use of hepatotoxic drugs This phenomenon is clinically benign but potentially stigmatizing. Substitute with LPV/r only if adherence is compromised.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Renal Stone</td>
<td>History of renal stone</td>
<td>Substitute with LPV/r;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AZT</td>
<td>Anaemia, neutropaenia, Baseline anaemia or neutropaenia CD4 count ≤200 cells/mm3 Myopathy, lipoatrophy or lipodystrophy Lactic acidosis or severe hepatomegaly with steatosis BMI &gt;25 (or body weight &gt;75 kg) Prolonged exposure to nucleoside analogues</td>
<td>Substitute with TDF or ABC</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LPV/r</td>
<td>Electrocadiographic abnormalities (PR and QT interval prolongation, torsade’s de pointes)</td>
<td>People with pre-existing conduction system disease Concomitant use of other drugs that may prolong the PR interval Congenital long QT syndrome Hypokalemia Concomitant use of drugs that may prolong the QT Use with caution in people with pre-existing conduction disease or those on concomitant drugs that may prolong the PR or QRS intervals</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interval</td>
<td>Hepatotoxicity</td>
<td>Pancreatitis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If LPV/r is used in first-line ART for children, use an age-appropriate NNRTI (NVP for children younger than 3 years and EFV for children 3 years and older). ATV can be used for children older than 6 years. If LPV/r is used in second-line ART for adults, use ATV/r. If boosted PIs are contraindicated and the person has failed on treatment with NNRTI in first-line ART consult specialist.</td>
<td>Underlying hepatic disease HBV and HCV co-infection Concomitant use of hepatotoxic drug</td>
<td>Advanced HIV disease</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>severe diarrhoea</td>
<td>Substitute with ATV/r</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Risk of prematurity, Lipoatrophy or metabolic syndrome, dyslipidemia or pancreatitis</td>
<td>Risk factors unknown</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NVP</td>
<td>Hepatotoxicity</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Underlying hepatic disease HBV and HCV Co-infection Concomitant use of hepatotoxic drugs Baseline CD4 &gt;250 cells/mm3 in Women Baseline CD4 &gt;400</td>
<td>EFV. If the person cannot tolerate either NNRTI, use boosted PI</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Condition</td>
<td>Risk Factors</td>
<td>Precautions</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Severe skin rash and hypersensitivity reaction including Stevens-Johnson syndrome</td>
<td>Risk factors unknown</td>
<td>Use boosted PIs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EFV</td>
<td>Persistent central nervous system toxicity (such as abnormal dreams, depression or mental confusion)(^2)</td>
<td>Depression or other mental disorder (previous or at baseline) Daytime dosing</td>
<td>NVP. If the person cannot tolerate either NNRTI, use boosted PIs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hepatotoxicity</td>
<td>Underlying hepatic disease – HBV and HCV co-infection Concomitant use of hepatotoxic drug</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Convulsions</td>
<td>History of seizure</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Severe skin hypersensitivity reaction,</td>
<td>Risk factors unknown</td>
<td>Use boosted PI</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gynaecomastia</td>
<td>Risk factor unknown</td>
<td>Substitute with NVP</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TDF</td>
<td>Chronic Kidney disease, Acute renal injury, Fanconi syndrome</td>
<td>Underlying renal disease Older age BMI &lt;18.5 (or body weight &lt;50 kg) Untreated diabetes mellitus Untreated hypertension Concomitant use of nephrotoxic drugs or a boosted PI</td>
<td>Substitute with AZT or ABC. Do not initiate TDF at eGFR &lt;50 mL/min, uncontrolled hypertension, untreated diabetes, or presence of renal failure.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^2\) Most CNS side effects will improve within 2-4 weeks after initiation

70
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Decreases in bone mineral density</th>
<th>History of osteomalacia and pathological fracture Risk factors for osteoporosis or bone loss</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lactic acidosis or severe hepatomegaly with steatosis</td>
<td>Prolonged exposure to nucleoside analogues Obesity</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**NB:** For those patients with HBV and HIV co-infection suffering from TDF toxicity consult the national guideline on management of HBV infection-2016.

**Monitoring TDF toxicity**

It is advisable for high-risk people (those who are older or have underlying renal disease, long-term diabetes or uncontrolled hypertension concomitant with boosted PIs or nephrotoxic drugs) to detect and limit further progression of renal impairment. A significant uncertainty remains around how best to monitor TDF-related bone toxicity among children however it is recommended to monitor growth in children taking TDF containing regimen.

**Clinical recommendations**

- Laboratory monitoring is not mandatory to initiate treatment with TDF.
- Routine blood pressure monitoring may be used to assess for hypertension.
- Urine dipsticks may be used to detect glycosuria or severe TDF nephrotoxicity in individuals without diabetes using TDF-containing regimens.
- If the creatinine test is routinely available, use the estimated glomerular filtration rate at baseline before initiating TDF regimens.
- Do not initiate TDF when the estimated glomerular filtration rate is <50 ml/min, or in long-term diabetes, uncontrolled hypertension and renal failure.
- Monitor growth in children using TDF.

**Toxicity monitoring for other ARV drugs**

AZT
AZT is associated with a risk of hematological toxicity, and measuring hemoglobin is recommended before initiating ART and monthly at least for the next three months. People with HIV with severe anemia at baseline (hemoglobin <7.0 g/dl) should avoid AZT as first-line therapy.

**NVP**
The laboratory measurement of liver enzymes has very low predictive value for NVP-containing regimens. However, monitoring hepatic enzymes is recommended, especially for women with HIV who have CD4 cell counts >250 cells/mm3 and men who have CD4 cell counts >400 cells/mm3 and individuals with HIV who are co-infected with HBV or HCV.

**EFV**
The main type of toxicity of EFV is central nervous system side effects, which typically resolve after a few weeks. However, in some cases, they can persist for months or not resolve at all.

**Drug substitutions for ARV drug toxicity**
Drug regimen or single agent substitutions may be required for drug toxicity and to avoid drug interactions.

**Clinical considerations**
- Delaying substitutions or switches when there are severe adverse drug effects may cause harm and may affect adherence, leading to drug resistance and treatment failure.
- When drug interruptions are required, it is important to consider the various half-lives of ARV drugs. For example, when a NNRTI needs to be discontinued, a staggered approach should be used by prolonging the use of the NRTI backbone for two weeks except life threatening conditions (grade 4 conditions) where you have to discontinue all ARV drugs (See Annex for details).

**Strategies for managing adverse drug reactions:**

**Step 1** Establish whether the problem is due to antiretroviral drugs, other medications, OIs, non-HIV related problems or clinical condition.

**Step 2** Try to identify the responsible ARV drug.
Step 3 Assess the degree/severity of the Adverse Event using the ACTG/PACTG adverse events grading system

Step 4 Manage the adverse event according to severity and also decide whether to substitute or discontinue ARV drug common adverse events clinical grading system in adults and adolescents –Annex 5.

Drug interactions

Providers should be aware of all drugs that people with HIV are taking when ART is initiated and new drugs that are added during treatment maintenance.

Table 3.10 Key ARV drug interactions and suggested management

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ARV drugs</th>
<th>Key interactions</th>
<th>Effect</th>
<th>Suggested management</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AZT</td>
<td>Ribavirin and pegylated interferon alpha-2a</td>
<td></td>
<td>Substitute with TDF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NVP</td>
<td>Rifampicin</td>
<td></td>
<td>Substitute NVP with EFV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Itraconazole and ketoconazole</td>
<td>Decrease concentration of anti-fungals to sub therapeutic level</td>
<td>Use an alternative antifungal agent (for example</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drug Interaction</td>
<td>Substitute/Adjustation Method</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Methadone</td>
<td>Adjust the methadone dose as appropriate</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Astemizole and terfenadine</td>
<td>Use alternative antihistamine agent</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EFV</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amodiaquine</td>
<td>Use an alternative antimalarial agent</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Methadone</td>
<td>Adjust the methadone dose as appropriate</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Estrogen-based hormonal contraception</td>
<td>Use alternative or additional contraceptive methods</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Astemizole and terfenadine</td>
<td>Use an alternative anti-histamine agent</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Boosted PI (ATV/r, LPV/r)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rifampicin</td>
<td>Substitute rifampicin with rifabutin</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Adjust the PI dose or substitute with three NRTIs (for children)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lovastatin and simvastatin</td>
<td>Increase concentration</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Use an alternative dyslipidaemia agent (for example pravastatin)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Drug-drug interactions (ARVs and anti-tuberculosis drugs for treatment of DR-TB)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------------------------</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Bone marrow suppression</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AZT</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lzd, R, H</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monitor blood counts regularly. Replace AZT if bone marrow suppression occurs. Consider suspension of Lzd. Also consider cotrimoxazole, if patient is taking.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Hepatotoxicity</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NVP, EFV, protease inhibitors, NRTIs</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H, R, E, Z, Bdq, PAS, Eto/Pto, FQ</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When severe, stop both the ART and TB medications, and restart the TB medications first. Consider cotrimoxazole, if patient is taking. Also rule out viral hepatitis (Hepatitis A, B, C &amp; CMV).</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Renal toxicity</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TDF</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aminoglycosides, Cm</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TDF may cause renal injury. If possible, avoid TDF in patients receiving aminoglycosides or Cm. If TDF is absolutely indicated, serum creatinine and electrolytes should be monitored (at least every two weeks). Even without the concurrent use of TDF, PLHIV have increased risk of renal toxicity secondary to aminoglycosides and Cm. In the presence of renal insufficiency, antiretrovirals and anti-TB medications need to have their doses adjusted.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Central nervous system (CNS)</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EFV</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cs, H, Eto/Pto, FQ</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EFV has a high rate of CNS side effects in the first 2–3 weeks of use, but typically self-limited and resolves. At present, there are limited data</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>toxicity</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>on the use of EFV with Cs; concurrent use is the accepted practice with</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>frequent monitoring for central nervous system toxicity. Psychosis can</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>occur with Cs, but is rare with EFV alone; other causes should always</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be ruled out.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>QTc Prolongation</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Protease inhibitors (PIs)</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Bdq, Dlm, Mfx, Gfx, Cfz, Lfx, Qfx</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PIs may result QTc prolongation. The additive effects of combining ART</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>with known second-line anti-TB drugs on QTc prolongation is not known.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Close monitoring is indicated.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dysglycaemia (disturbed blood sugar regulation)</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Protease inhibitors (PIs)</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Gfx, Eto/Pto</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Protease inhibitors tend to cause insulin resistance and hyperglycaemia.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eto/Pto tends to make insulin control in diabetics more difficult, and</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>can result in hypoglycemia and poor glucose regulation.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For patients who are co-infected with HIV and MDR/XDR-TB, there is limited information on interactions of ARV drugs with new drugs such as bedaquiline and delamanid. Concomitant use of EFV and PIs with bedaquiline may interfere with drug concentrations and require close clinical monitoring; alternative ARV options should be considered, if possible.
Monitoring individuals receiving ART is important to ensure successful treatment, identify adherence problems and determine whether and which ART regimens should be switched in case of treatment failure. Routine viral load testing is a more sensitive and early indicator of treatment failure. Viral load testing should be done after 6 & 12 months of initiating ART and then every 12 months then after in order to detect treatment failure proactively. Viral load testing should be used aside from the routine testing schedule whenever there is clinical or immunologic suspicion of treatment failure.

Table 3.12 Definitions of clinical, immunological and virological failure for the decision to switch ART regimens

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Failure</th>
<th>Definition</th>
<th>Remark</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Clinical failure</td>
<td>Adults and adolescents New or recurrent clinical event indicating severe immunodeficiency (WHO clinical stage 4 condition and certain WHO clinical stage 3 conditions (pulmonary TB and severe bacterial infections) may also indicate treatment failure) after 6 months of effective treatment &lt;br&gt; Children New or recurrent clinical event indicating advanced or severe immunodeficiency (WHO clinical stage 3 and 4 clinical condition with exception of TB) after 6 months of effective treatment</td>
<td>The condition must be differentiated from immune reconstitution inflammatory syndrome occurring after initiating ART.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Immunologic failure</td>
<td>Adults and adolescents  • CD4 count at or below 250 cells/mm3 following clinical failure Or</td>
<td>Without concomitant or recent infection to cause a transient decline in the</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
- Persistent CD4 levels below 100 cells/mm³

**Children**
- Younger than 5 years
  - Persistent CD4 levels below 200 cells/mm³ or <10%
- Older than 5 years
  - Persistent CD4 levels below 100 cells/mm³

CD4 cell count. Persistent is to mean at least 2CD4 measurements below the threshold.

Current WHO clinical and immunological criteria have low sensitivity and positive predictive value for identifying individuals with virological failure.

| Virologic failure | Viral load above 1000 copies/mL based on two consecutive viral load measurements in 3 months, with adherence support following the first viral load test | An individual must be taking ART for at least 6 months before it can be determined that a regimen has failed. VL testing should not be done when there is an acute infection/fever. See guidance above. |

When a client is found to have a viral load of >1000copies/ml on routine or need based viral load test, providers need to address adherence related issues with enhanced support, identification of barriers and addressing them for three months. Viral load testing must be repeated after three months of enhanced adherence support. If the the second viral load test is <1000copies/ml the patient need to be maintained on the first line regimen ensuring continued adherence support. However, if the second viral load test is >1000copies/ml the client need to be switched to appropriate second line regimen based on the first line combination. Patients with mental health problems and substance abuse may need extended periods of support before deciding regimen switch for treatment failure.
Enhanced Adherence support (EAS) Enhanced Adherence support is important for patients that have uncontrolled VL, persisted or new immunosuppression, developing new OIs or have multiple adherence barriers. It shall be systematic and documenting the interventions provided during the EAS period.

Table 3.13. Summary of components of Enhanced Adherence Counseling (EAC)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Enhanced Adherence counselling Sessions overview</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **Session1** | • Review cognitive, behavioural, emotional and socio-economic barriers to adherence:  
- Treatment literacy  
- Medications: dosage, timing, storage  
- Side effects  
- Discuss risk reduction (e.g. for substance abuse)  
- Motivation  
- Mental health screening (screen for depression using national mental health assessment tool or PHQ-9, Table 4.14 Annex ZZ)  
- Discuss patient’s support systems  
  • Referrals and networking  
  • Assist patient to develop adherence plan to address the identified issues |
| **Session2** | • Review adherence plan from the first session and discuss any challenges  
  • Identify other possible gaps and issues emerging  
  • Referrals and networking  
  • Assist patient to modify the adherence plan to address the identified issues |
| **Session3** | • Review adherence plan from the first and second session and discuss any challenges  
  • Identify other possible gaps and issues emerging  
  • Assist patient to modify the adherence plan to address the identified issues  
  • Decision on repeat VL based on current adherence:  
    - If the adherence is good: plan repeat VL testing after
three months of good adherence and explain possible ways forward, emphasizing role of the patient and the health facility

- If adherence challenges persist: plan further Enhanced Adherence Counselling sessions before repeating the VL

| Session to Discuss Repeat viral load results | • Discuss result of the second VL test  
| • Plan the way forward:  
  - If VL now < 1,000: continue current regimen with enhanced adherence, repeat VL after 6 months  
| • If VL ≥ 1,000: prepare patient for change of regimen |
Figure 12.2 Algorithm for diagnosis and management of a) clinical and immunologic   b) virologic treatment failure

Routine clinical and viral load monitoring

Signs of Clinical/Immunologic treatment failure

Intensity adherence support

Repeat Viral load testing after 3 months

Viral load >1000copies/ml

Switch to 2nd line regimen

Viral load <1000copies/ml

Continue 1st line regimen
3.7. What ART regimen to switch to (second-line ART regimens)

Using a boosted PI + two NRTI combinations is recommended as the preferred strategy for second-line ART for adults, adolescents and also for children when NNRTI-containing regimens were used in first-line ART. In children using a PI-based regimen for first-line ART, switching to NNRTI or maintaining the PI regimen is recommended according with age.

Second-line ART regimens for adults and adolescents

It is recommended that second-line adult regimens include a boosted-PI plus two NRTIs (determined by the drug used in first-line therapy).

Guidance for Changing ARV Regimens for treatment failure

- Ensure diagnosis of treatment failure to avoid premature switching.
- Assess adherence and address barriers
- Address Drug interactions issues
- Don’t add one drug to a failing regimen
- Consider resistance & cross resistance
- Get advice from experienced clinicians
- At least 2 new drugs
- Preferably 1 new drug class

Once it is decided and patients are switched to second line regimen is started, strong adherence support should be continued and viral load monitoring should be started after six months of second line treatment and then every 12 months.

Table 3.12 Summary of preferred second-line ART regimens for adults and adolescents
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Target population</th>
<th>Preferred Second line regimen</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Adults and adolescents (≥10 years)*</td>
<td>If AZT was used in first-line ART</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>TDF + 3TC + LPV/r or ATV/r</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>If TDF was used in first line ART</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>AZT + 3TC + LPV/r or ATV/r</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HIV and TB co-infection</td>
<td>If rifabutin is not available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Same NRTI backbones as recommended for adults and adolescents plus double-dose LPV/r (that is, LPV/r 800 mg/200 mg twice daily) or standard LPV dose with an adjusted dose of RTV (that is, LPV/r 400 mg/400 mg twice daily)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HIV and HBV co-infection</td>
<td>AZT + TDF + 3TC + (ATV/r or LPV/r)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Adult clients taking ABC can be shifted to TDF or 3TC.
- For pregnant women same regimens recommended as for adults and adolescents

### 3.7.1. Second-line ART for children (including adolescents)

Recommended potent and effective second-line regimens for infants and children is especially difficult because of the current lack of experience in resource-limited settings and the limited formulations available. This highlights the importance of choosing potent and effective first-line regimens and ensuring their durability and effectiveness by optimizing adherence.

For children starting first-line ART with an NNRTI-based regimen, PI-based regimens remain the recommended choice for second-line therapy. LPV/r is the preferred boosted PI option, but ATV/r may be considered if more appropriate formulations become available. After failure of a first-line LPV/r-based regimen, children younger than 3 years should remain on their first-line
regimen, and measures to improve adherence should be undertaken. After failure of a first-line LPV/r-based regimen, children 3 years or older should switch to a second-line regimen containing an NNRTI plus two NRTIs; EFV is the preferred NNRTI.

After failure of a first-line regimen of ABC or TDF + 3TC, the preferred NRTI backbone option for second-line ART is AZT + 3TC and failure of a first-line regimen is containing AZT or d4T + 3TC, the preferred NRTI backbone option for second-line ART is ABC or TDF + 3TC.

Table 3.13 Summary of recommended first- and second-line ART regimens for children (including adolescents)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LPV/r-based first-line regimen</th>
<th>Children</th>
<th>First line regimen</th>
<th>Second line regimen</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Younger than 3 years</td>
<td>ABC + 3TC + LPV/r</td>
<td>No change&lt;sup&gt;a&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 years and Older</td>
<td>AZT + 3TC + LPV/r</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ABC + 3TC + LPV/r</td>
<td>AZT + 3TC + EFV</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>AZT + 3TC + LPV/r</td>
<td>ABC or TDF&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt; + 3TC + EFV</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NNRTI-based first-line regimen</td>
<td>All ages</td>
<td>ABC + 3TC + EFV (or NVP)</td>
<td>AZT + 3TC + LPV/r&lt;sup&gt;c&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>TDF&lt;sup&gt;b&lt;/sup&gt; + 3TC + EFV (or NVP)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>AZT + 3TC + EFV (or NVP)</td>
<td>ABC or TDF + 3TC + LPV/r&lt;sup&gt;c&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<sup>a</sup> No change is recommended unless in the presence of advanced clinical disease progression or lack of adherence specifically because of poor palatability of LPV/r. In this case, switching to a second-line NVP-based regimen should be considered.

<sup>b</sup> TDF may only be given to children >2 years.

<sup>c</sup> ATV/r can be used as an alternative to LPV/r in children older than 6 years.
3.8. Identification and management of second line treatment failure

Even though there is limited data regarding second line treatment failure, the national program data from EPHI showed that 20% of 198 patients had virologic failure for second line regimens, i.e. viral load of >1000 copies/ml. Patients who are on second line regimen and have high viral load level (>1000 copies/ml) after 6 months of treatment need to go through the algorithm as described for first line treatment failure with enhanced adherence support and repeat test after three months to decide second line failure. Once patients are confirmed to have second line failure they should be referred to tertiary care center for initiation of third line regimens.

Management of Second Line Treatment Failure

The approach in switching to third line should follow the guiding principles listed out for switching to second line drugs. Table xx shows the regimens to be selected for third line.

Table 3.x Summary of sequencing options for preferred first-, second- and third-line ART regimens in adults, adolescents, pregnant women and children

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Population</th>
<th>1st line regimens</th>
<th>2nd line regimens</th>
<th>3rd line regimens</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Adults, adolescents, Pregnant/breastfeeding women</td>
<td>AZT+3TC + EFV/NVP</td>
<td>TDF+3TC + ATV/r or LPV/r</td>
<td>DRV/r a + DTG (or RAL) ± ABC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>TDF+3TC+EFV/NVP</td>
<td>AZT+3TC + ATV/r or LPV/r</td>
<td>DRV/r a + DTG (or RAL) ± ABC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ABC+3TC+EFV/NVP</td>
<td>AZT+3TC + ATV/r or LPV/r</td>
<td>DRV/r a + DTG (or RAL) ± TDF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Children</td>
<td>d4t/AZT+3TC + LPV/r</td>
<td>If older than 3 years:</td>
<td>DTG/RAL/DRV/r + AZT+3TC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ABC+3TC + EFV</td>
<td>ABC+3TC + EFV</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>TDF+3TC + EFV</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ABC+3TC + LPV/r</td>
<td>AZT+3TC + EFV</td>
<td>DRV/r /RAL/DTGd + TDF+3TC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ABC+3TC + EFV/NVP</td>
<td>2 NRTIs + ATV/r or LPV/r</td>
<td>DRV/r + DTGe ± 1-2 NRTIs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>AZT+3TC + EFV/NVP</td>
<td></td>
<td>RAL (or DTG) f + 2 NRTIs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

a In PI-experienced patients, the recommended DRV/r dose should be 600mg/100 mg twice daily.
b If RAL is not available, no change is recommended unless in the presence of advanced clinical disease progression or lack of adherence specifically because of poor palatability of LPV/r. In this case, switching to a second-line NVP-based regimen should be considered. Based on approval of the use of EFV in children less than three years of age, an EFV-based regimen could be considered as an alternative. However, more data are needed to inform how best to use EFV in this population.

c ATV/r can be used as an alternative to LPV/r in children older than three months of age, however the limited availability of suitable formulations for children younger than six years of age, the lack of a fixed-dose formulation and the need for separate administration of RTV booster should be considered when choosing this regimen.

d DRV/r should not be used in children younger than three years of age.

e RAL can be used in children failing PI-based second-line treatment when DTG is not available and when RAL has not been not used in a previous regimen. DTG is currently only approved for children 12 years and older, however studies are ongoing to determine dosing in younger children and approval to lower age groups is expected in the near future.

f RAL can be used in children failing PI-based second-line treatment when DTG is not available and when RAL has not been not used in a previous regimen. DTG is currently approved only for children 12 years and older; however, studies are ongoing to determine dosing in younger children, and approval for lower age groups is expected in the near future.

g DRV/r should not be used in children younger than 3 years of age.
CHAPTER FOUR: PREVENTION, SCREENING AND MANAGEMENT OF COMMON CO-INFECTIONS

Although ART is initiated for all HIV diagnosed patients as early as possible, most patients present for care and treatment at late clinical stages, therefore screening and management of OI is still critical. Opportunistic infections are the predominant causes of morbidity and mortality among HIV-infected patients. Main areas affected are the nervous, gastro-intestinal and respiratory systems, and the skin. The level of immunity determines the occurrence and type of opportunistic infections. In general milder infections, such as herpes zoster and other skin infections, occur early whereas serious life-threatening infections such as CNS toxoplasmosis and cryptococcal meningitis occur later with severe immune-suppression. Some life-threatening infections, such as pneumonia and TB, may occur early as well as later. When TB occurs later it is atypical, more disseminated and more extra pulmonary.

General strategies to prevent opportunistic infections are:

- Reduction of exposure
- Chemoprophylaxis (primary/secondary)
- Immunization and
- starting HAART

4.1. Co-trimoxazole preventive therapy (CPT)

Co-trimoxazole preventive therapy (CPT) should be implemented as an integral component of a package of HIV-related services. Existing recommendations cover initiation of CPT among adults, adolescents, pregnant women and children for prevention of Pneumocystis pneumonia, toxoplasmosis, bacterial infections & diarrhoea caused by Isospora belli or Cyclospora species, as well as benefits for malaria prophylaxis.
### Table 4.1 CPT Indication for primary prophylaxis

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Age</th>
<th>Criteria for initiation</th>
<th>Criteria for discontinuation*</th>
<th>Monitoring approach</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>HIV exposed Infants</strong></td>
<td>In all, starting at 4–6 weeks after birth irrespective of CD4 level</td>
<td>Until the risk of HIV transmission ends or HIV infection is excluded</td>
<td>Clinical at 3-monthly Intervals</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;1 year</td>
<td>In all</td>
<td>Until 5 years of age regardless of CD4% or clinical symptoms or never</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1-5 years</td>
<td>Regardless of CD4 % or Any WHO stage</td>
<td>Never stop</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>≥5 years, including Adults</td>
<td>Any WHO stage and CD4 count ≤350 cells/mm³ or WHO 3 or 4 irrespective of CD4 level</td>
<td>Never or when CD4 ≥350 cells/mm³ after 6 months of ART</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Discontinue also if the person has Stevens-Johnson syndrome, severe liver disease, severe anaemia, severe pancytopenia or negative HIV status. Contraindications to co-trimoxazole preventive therapy: severe allergy to sulfa drugs; severe liver disease, severe renal disease and glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase (G6PD) deficiency.*
### Table 4.2 Dosage of Co-trimoxazole for adults, Adolescents, children & infants

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Age(weight)</th>
<th>Suspicion (240 mg /5ml co-trimoxazole)</th>
<th>Single strength tab (480 mg of Co-trimoxazole)</th>
<th>Double strength tab (960 mg of Co –trimoxazole)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Up to 6 month (5KG)</td>
<td>2.5ml/day</td>
<td>1/2tab /day</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 months to 5 yr (5-15 Kg)</td>
<td>5ml /day</td>
<td>1/2 tab/day</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6-14 yr (15-30 KG)</td>
<td>10ml/day</td>
<td>1 tab/day</td>
<td>½ tab/day</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt;14 yrs (&gt;30 KG )</td>
<td></td>
<td>2tab/day</td>
<td>1 tab/day</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table 4.3 Adverse Effects of CPT & management

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Toxicity</th>
<th>Clinical description</th>
<th>Recommendation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Grade 1</td>
<td>Erythema ,pruritis</td>
<td>Prescribe Anti-histamine and continue CPT &amp; close Follow-up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grade 2</td>
<td>Diffuse maculopapular rash, dry desquamation</td>
<td>Prescribe Anti-histamine and continue CPT &amp; close Follow-up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grade 3</td>
<td>Vesiculation, minor mucosal ulceration</td>
<td>STOP CPT, manage and re-introduce after 2 weeks with observation (desensitize)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grade 4</td>
<td>Exfoliative dermatitis, Steven-Johnson syndrome or erythema multiforme ,moist desquamation</td>
<td>STOP CPT NEVER RESTART CO-TRIMOXAZOL</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
4.2. Management of Opportunistic Diseases of the respiratory system

4.2.1. Tuberculosis

TB is the most frequent life-threatening opportunistic infection and a leading cause of death among HIV infected people. TB increases HIV replication through the process of immune activation leading to increased viral load. This results in more rapid progression of HIV disease. On the other hand, HIV increases susceptibility to be infected with M.tuberculosis, the risk of progression to TB disease and the incidence and prevalence of TB. The life time risk of HIV positive individuals who develop TB is 20-37 times greater than HIV negative individuals. Thus, it is essential for both TB and HIV control programs to synergize their joint efforts and intensify the implementation of TB/HIV collaborative activities to mitigate the dual burden of TB/HIV in populations at risk or affected by both diseases.

The rationale for the integration is that Tuberculosis and HIV Prevention and Control programs share mutual challenge of high impact of TB on HIV and vise versa. Therefore, two programs must collaborate to provide better service for the co-infected patients.

Nationally Recommended TB/HIV Collaborative Activities

A. Strengthen the Mechanisms for integrated TB and HIV services delivery
   - Strengthen the coordination mechanism for integrated TB/HIV services at all levels;
   - Conduct surveillance to determine HIV burden among TB patients and TB burden among HIV patients;
   - Carry out joint TB/HIV planning for integrated TB and HIV services delivery;
   - Conduct monitoring and evaluation of collaborative TB/HIV activities.

B. Reduce the burden of TB in HIV infected people and initiate early antiretroviral therapy (The three I’s i.e. Intensive case finding, INH Preventive Therapy and Infection control)
   - Intensify TB case finding and ensure quality TB treatment;
   - Initiate TB prevention with earlier initiation of ART and Isoniazid preventive therapy (IPT);
   - Ensure Tuberculosis infection control in healthcare and congregate settings.

C. Reduce the burden of HIV in patients with presumptive and diagnosed TB.
   - Provide HIV testing and counseling to presumptive and confirmed TB patients;
   - Provide HIV prevention services for presumptive and confirmed TB patients;
   - Provide co-trimoxazole preventive therapy for HIV positive TB patients;
• Ensure HIV/AIDS prevention, treatment and care for HIV positive TB patients;
• Provide antiretroviral therapy for HIV positive TB patients.

Table 4.4 Timing of ART for adults and children with TB

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Patients with Tuberculosis found to be HIV positive</th>
<th>HIV positive patients taking ART diagnosed with TB</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| • ART should be started in all TB patients, including those with drug-resistant TB, irrespective of the CD4 count.  
  • Antituberculosis treatment should be initiated first, followed by ART as soon as possible within the first 8 weeks of treatment. The HIV-positive TB patients with profound immune-suppression (such as CD4 counts less than 50 cells/mm3) should receive ART immediately within the first two weeks of initiating TB treatment  
  • ART should be started in any child with active TB disease as soon as possible within eight weeks following the initiation of anti-tuberculosis treatment irrespective of the CD4 count and clinical stage.  
  • Efavirenz should be used as the preferred drug in patients starting ART while on Anti-tuberculosis treatment  
  • When second line is initiated LPV/r is preferable | • Start anti-TB  
  • Modify ART regimen to avoid drug-drug interaction  
  • Evaluate for treatment failure |

The 3Is intervention

1. Intensify TB case finding and ensure quality TB treatment
Tuberculosis case finding should be intensified in all HIV testing and counseling services for HIV positive clients by using a set of simple questions for early identification of presumptive TB cases. HIV positive clients coming through HCT services should be informed about the advantages of being screened for TB. Once informed about the risk of developing active TB, they should undergo screening for it. Adults and adolescents living with HIV should be screened for TB with clinical algorithm, those who report any one of the symptoms of current cough, fever, weight loss or night sweats may have active TB and should be evaluated for TB and other diseases.
Every adult and adolescent should be evaluated for M.TB before ART is initiated. Infection control measures should be given priority to reduce M.TB transmission in all settings that provide care.

Chest radiography can be done if available but is not required to classify people into TB and non-TB groups. In settings with high HIV prevalence and high TB prevalence among PLHIV (such as exceeding 10%), strong consideration must be given to adding other sensitive investigations.

Contraindications include: active hepatitis (acute or chronic), regular and heavy alcohol consumption and symptom of requirement for initiating IPT.

Investigations for TB should be performed in accordance with existing national guideline.

Figure 4.1 Algorithm for TB screening among adults and adolescents living with HIV in HIV-prevalent and resource-constrained settings.
Children living with HIV who have any of the symptoms of poor weight gain, fever, current cough or contact history with TB case may have active TB and should be evaluated for TB and other conditions. If the evaluation shows no TB, children should be offered IPT regardless of their age.

a. Poor weight gain is defined as (1) reported weight loss or very low weight (weight for age less than –3 z-score), (2) underweight (weight for age less than –2 z-score), (3) confirmed weight loss (>5%) since the last visit or (4) growth curve flattening.

b. Contraindications include: active hepatitis (acute or chronic) and symptoms of peripheral neuropathy

c. Investigations for TB must be performed in accordance with existing national guidelines.
Figure 4.2: Algorithm for TB screening and IPT for children more than one year old and living with HIV-FMOH

- Contraindications include: active hepatitis (acute or chronic) and symptoms of peripheral neuropathy
- Investigations for TB must be performed in accordance with existing national guidelines

Figure 4.3: Algorithm for TB Screening and IPT for Infants Less than One Year Old and Living with HIV.

- Contraindications include: active hepatitis (acute or chronic) and symptoms of peripheral neuropathy
- Investigations for TB must be performed in accordance with existing national guidelines
Diagnosis of TB in HIV infected people

Diagnosis of TB is challenging in HIV positive individuals, especially when the stage of the disease is advanced. Standard TB diagnostic approaches and clinical algorithms should be followed to guide the diagnosis of TB in PLHIV.

Clinical assessment: thorough clinical evaluation of the patient, including exclusion of other OIs, should be done. For patients with respiratory symptoms in whom tuberculosis is less likely and who are treated empirically for bacterial pneumonia or pneumocystis pneumonia (PCP), clinical response should not automatically exclude the diagnosis of tuberculosis. Acute bacterial pneumonia of PCP may occur in patients with underlying tuberculosis and patients should therefore be reevaluated for tuberculosis, particularly if respiratory symptoms persist after treatment.

XPert MTB/RIF Test (GeneXpert Test): The GeneXpert MTB/RIF system is a fully automated nested real time PCR system, which detects MTB complex DNA in sputum and other sample types (i.e pleural, lymph node aspirate or tissue, CSF, gastric fluid and tissue other than lymph node). It simultaneously identifies mutations in the rpoB gene, which are associated with rifampicin resistance. The assay detects M.TB and rifampicin resistance; conferring mutations using three specific primers and five unique molecular probes. It provides results less than 2 hours and has minimal bio-safety requirements and training.

Xpert MTB/RIF test (GeneXpert Test) is recommended as an initial diagnostic test for all presumptive TB cases (individuals with TB symptoms) among HIV infected people.

- Xpert MTB/RIF should be used rather than conventional microscopy, culture and drug susceptibility testing (DST) as the initial diagnostic test in adults and children suspected of
  - having HIV-associated TB or multidrug resistant TB.
- Xpert MTB/RIF should be used in preference to conventional microscopy and culture as the initial diagnostic test for cerebrospinal fluid specimens from patients suspected of having TB meningitis.
- Xpert MTB/RIF may be used as a replacement test for usual practice (including conventional microscopy, culture or histopathology) for testing specific non-respiratory
specimens (lymph nodes and other tissues) from patients suspected of having extrapulmonary TB.

**AFB microscopy:** AFB Microscopy is indicated for HIV infected presumptive TB cases when access to XPERT MTB/RIF test is limited. The recommendation for AFB microscopy is 2 spot tests with in 1 hour.

**Chest radiography:** Chest X-ray plays a significant role in shortening delays in diagnosis of TB in PLHIV. It can also be an important entry point to diagnose non-tubercular chest diseases, which are common among HIV positives.

**Sputum culture:** sputum culture is the gold standard for the diagnosis of tuberculosis in general. In patients with Xpert negative results, sputum culture may be indicated as part of the diagnostic procedure for people living with HIV if clinical suspicion persists.

**Diagnosis of extra-pulmonary tuberculosis in HIV positive**

Extra-pulmonary tuberculosis is more HIV-related than pulmonary tuberculosis. The accurate diagnosis of extra-pulmonary tuberculosis is complex and difficult, particularly in peripheral health facilities with limited diagnostic capacity. Therefore, it is important for healthcare workers to have high-index of suspicion and critically evaluate through clinical algorithms. For other sites, do organ specific investigations.
Presumptive TB Cases

(Do DR-TB Risk assessment; offer HIV test; check for Age)

- Patient with no prior TB treatment and not contact of RR/MDR-TB cases, or
- HIV Negative & Age ≥ 14yrs old

AFB microscopy
(Two sputum specimens collected on spot)

- A least one sputum Positive for AFB
- Two Negative results for AFB

Bacteriological confirmed TB, and Treat with First Line TB

- MTB detected RR not detected
- MTB detected RR detected
- MTB Not Detected

Xpert MTB/RIF Assay

- Invalid/Error/No result - MTB
- Repeat Xpert with fresh morning sample

Note:

1. Presumptive TB is defined by having symptom & signs consistent with TB; mainly Persistent cough of two or more weeks (or cough of any duration if HIV positive).
2. For patients in whom HIV test is not done at time of TB evaluation, Xpert test may be the initial test if the clinician has strong clinical suspicion of HIV infection or if the patient possesses risk behavior to acquire HIV infection.
3. Liquid specimens from EPTB site (in particular CSF) may be subjected to Xpert test without additional processing.
4. Xpert test is preferred test to examine Presumptive TB patients identified at facility where the machine is available.
5. Broad spectrum antimicrobials, excluding fluoroquinolone or anti-TB drugs is to be given for 10-14 days.
6. RR-TB result in patients considered to be low risk for MDR-TB warrants DR-TB risk re-assessment and a repeat Xpert test on fresh specimen, and if result shows RR-TB again; link the patient to TIC for Second line TB treatment; but if the repeat test result identifies TB but not RR-TB, initiate first line TB regimen as bacteriologically confirmed susceptible TB at TB clinic.

Note:

- Xpert MTB/RIF test is recommended as initial diagnostic test for CSF in patients presumed to have TB meningitis.
- One sputum sample for the facility which have Xpert test and two sample for sample referring facilities

Fig 4.4 National TB and MDR TB diagnostic algorithm at health facility level
**Antibiotic trial:** Antibiotic trial has a role to treat concomitant bacterial infection PLHIV with cough or serious illness. However, antibiotic trial is not helpful in the diagnosis of TB in HIV positives.

### Table 4.5 Extra pulmonary TB diagnostic approaches in HIV positive patients.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type of TB</th>
<th>Evidences Strongly Suggestive of EPTB</th>
<th>Investigations and recommendations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lymph Node TB</td>
<td>2Cm or more in size, Asymmetrical/localized; Painless swelling; Firm/fluctuated; Cervical location; patient with weight loss, night sweats, fever</td>
<td>LN Aspirate for AFB has 85% yield, if not possible to do FNAC of LN, start anti-TB.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pleural effusion</td>
<td>Unilateral effusion; Aspirate of fluid is clear and straw colored and clots on standing in a tube without anti-coagulants or pleural fluid analysis shows protein &gt;30g/L &amp; &gt;50% lymphocytes; Patients with weight loss, night sweats, fever, or evidence of TB elsewhere</td>
<td>Start anti-TB as soon as possible.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tuberculosis Meningitis</td>
<td>Patients with weight loss, night sweats, fever; Cerebrospinal fluid clear with high protein, low glucose and lymphocytes; Cryptococal antigen (or Indian Ink and fungal culture) negative in CSF Evidence of TB elsewhere</td>
<td>Admit patient, start anti-TB with steroids as soon as possible. Start treatment for cryptococcal meningitis based on clinical or lab evidences. Note: GeneXpert test has to be conducted on CSF specimen as an initial diagnostic test as much as possible.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pericardial Effusion</td>
<td>Heamodynamically significant pericardial effusion, often with pleural effusions, Lung fields clear and intra-thoracic lymphadenopathy. Usually patients with weight loss, night sweats, fever. N.B. 90% of Pericardial Effusions in HIV positive patients in high-TB burden areas is due to TB.</td>
<td>CXR, Echocardiogram or chest ultrasound; pericardiocentesis, and pericardial biopsy; routine TB Workup. Start anti-TB as soon as possible</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disseminated TB</td>
<td>Patients with weight loss, night sweats, fever and cough; Abnormal CXR (which can include military pattern); Large spleen/liver, Anemia</td>
<td>Start anti-TB treatment (add antibiotics if critically ill)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TB of the Spine</td>
<td>Pain over localized area, Children/adolescents –often thoracic vertebrae. Adults frequently lumbar vertebrae.</td>
<td>Spinal imaging (e.g. X-Ray, MRI); FNA of vertebral lesions and /or paraspinous abscesses when feasible.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
II. **Initiate TB prevention with Isoniazid Preventive Therapy**

Isoniazid Preventive Therapy (IPT) is the use of Isoniazid to sterilize latent TB infection. Thus, isoniazid is given to individuals with latent infection with Mycobacterium tuberculosis in order to prevent reactivation to active disease. Screening for exclusion of active TB in HIV infected persons is the single most important step that should precede the decision to initiate IPT.

So far, evidences strongly favor the benefit of IPT in eligible individuals. Studies have shown that providing IPT to people living with HIV does not increase the risk of developing INH-resistant TB. Therefore, concerns regarding the development of INH resistance should not be a barrier to providing IPT.

The dose of INH is 300mg/day for adults and 10mg/kg for children. The duration of IPT is for six months. It is also desirable to provide vitamin B6 (25mg/day) to prevent INH-induced peripheral neuropathy.

**Table 4.5 INH dosage for children and adolescents**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Weight Ranges for Children (kg)</th>
<th>Number of 100 mg tablets of INH to be administered per dose</th>
<th>Dose given (mg)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>&lt; 5</td>
<td>½ tablet</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.1-9.9</td>
<td>1 tablet</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10-13.9</td>
<td>1 ½ tablet or ½ adult tablet</td>
<td>150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14-19.9</td>
<td>2 tablets</td>
<td>200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20-24.9</td>
<td>2 ½ tablets</td>
<td>250</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt;25</td>
<td>3 tablets or one adult tablet</td>
<td>300</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Contraindications of IPT

- Individuals with any one or more of the following conditions should not receive IPT.
- Symptoms compatible with tuberculosis even if the diagnosis isn’t yet confirmed.
- Active hepatitis (chronic or acute)
- Regular and heavy alcohol consumptions
- Prior allergy or intolerance to isoniazid
- Symptoms of peripheral neuropathy

NB: Past history of TB and current pregnancy should not be contraindications for starting of IPT.

National policy

- IPT should be administered at enrolment to HIV care after ruling out active TB
- IPT is to be administered once and should not be repeated unless there is strong indication on its benefits which is to be decided by senior physician
- IPT should be administered only for six months
- IPT should not be administered right after completing full course of TB treatment
- IPT can be administered for patients who had history of TB treatment before three years

Follow-up of Patients on IPT

Patients should be given one-month supply of Isoniazid and assessed at each follow-up visit to:
  - Evaluate adherence to treatment and to educate client.
  - Evaluate for drug toxicity.
  - Evaluate for signs and symptoms of active tuberculosis or other OIs.
  - Stop IPT if active TB is diagnosed and to immediately start anti-TB.

III. Infection control

People living with HIV are at high risk of acquiring TB in health care facilities and congregate settings. Each health care facility should have a TB infection control plan for the facility that includes administrative, environmental and personal protection measures to reduce the transmission of TB in health care and congregate settings and surveillance of TB disease among
workers. Health care workers with HIV should be provided with ART and IPT if they are eligible.

Summary of recommendations for key actions for infection control

Administrative (facility-level infection control committee and protocols)

- A triage system to identify people suspected of having TB
- Separate people with suspected or confirmed TB
- Cough etiquette and respiratory hygiene

Health workers and care providers

- Surveillance and information
- Package of care for HIV-positive workers (ART and ionized preventive therapy)
- Protective equipment (particulate respirator masks that meet or exceed N95 standards)
- Relocation for health care workers living with HIV to a lower-risk area

Environmental

- Ventilation (mechanical)
- Ventilation (natural)

Personal

- Spend as much time as possible outside
- Cough etiquette
- Sleep alone while smear-positive
- Avoid congregate settings and public transport while smear-positive

Reduce the Burden of HIV in Patients with Presumptive and Confirmed TB

Provide HIV testing and counseling to presumptive and confirmed TB patients

HIV testing is an entry point for HIV care and treatment services including ART. This equally applies to TB patients. Significant proportions of TB patients are co-infected with HIV. Among TB patients who are also HIV-infected, other Opportunistic Infections (OIs) are significant causes of morbidity and mortality even with a successful treatment of TB. Hence, HIV testing and counseling should be routinely offered to all TB patients (Refer also to the National Guidelines on HCT).

Introduce HIV prevention interventions for presumptive and confirmed TB patients
All clients attending TB clinics should be screened for sexually transmitted infections using a set of simple questions. Those with symptoms of sexually transmitted infections should be treated or referred to the treatment providers. (Refer to the National Guideline for the Treatment of STI Using the Syndromic Approach.) Condoms should be made available in TB clinics.

Provide co-trimoxazole preventive therapy for HIV positive TB patients

Cotrimoxazole is a safe and broad-spectrum antibiotic with activity against a broad range of bacterial, fungal and protozoal infections that are common cause for morbidity and mortality in HIV infected populations. Therefore, CPT is recommended to all TB/HIV co-infected patients regardless of their CD4 Count. All clients receiving CPT should be registered on the Unit TB register, as well as the Pre ART/ART Register. They should also be monitored monthly (Refer to the National Co-trimoxazole Prophylaxis Guideline for details).

Ensure HIV/AIDS prevention, treatment and care for HIV positive TB patients.

Referral linkages between TB and HIV services must be strengthened to provide comprehensive HIV prevention services for TB patients and their families. Tuberculosis control program should implement procedures for prevention of occupational and nosocomial exposure to HIV infection in their services. Health units should be equipped with protective materials and routinely follow standard precautions to prevent HIV transmission in the healthcare settings. Linkage should be ensured for pregnant and non-pregnant HIV positive clients to access services for prevention of mother to child transmission. TB clinics should establish linkage with HIV services to provide the continuum of care and support for HIV positives during and after completion of anti-TB treatment.

Provide Antiretroviral Therapy for HIV positive TB patients.

ART should be provided to all HIV positive TB patients regardless of CD4 count or WHO stage. Antituberculosis treatment should be provided first, followed by ART as soon as possible within the first 12 weeks of treatment (refer to national HIV care and treatment guideline for latest recommendations).

Management consideration for TB/HIV Co-infections

In the management of TB/HIV confection, treatment of tuberculosis always given priority over ART.

Patient evaluation and linkage for HIV Care services: As soon as HIV is identified in a TB patient, the patient should be enrolled to HIV chronic care. ideally, the HIV care can be delivered at the TB clinic for the duration of TB treatment. In settings where this is not possible, there should be a strong referral system in place to link the TB/HIV co-infected patient to the HIV clinic promptly. Appropriate clinical, psychosocial & laboratory evaluations (including complete blood count, chemistry tests & CD4 count tests) as per the national guidelines for ART should be performed as soon as possible. Patients should be initiated on Co-trimoxazole preventive therapy and ART regardless of CD4 count or WHO clinical stage and ART regardless of CD4 count or WHO clinical stage.

ART is recommended for all HIV infected TB patients regardless of CD4 count or WHO clinical stage. CD4 cells count shall preferably be determined for all HIV infected TB patients.
The preferred regimen for TB/HIV co-infected adult patients is TDF +3TC+EFV, regardless of pregnancy status.

**Multidrug-resistant TB and HIV**

Multidrug-resistant TB (MDR-TB) is defined as TB that is resistant to at least ionized and rifampicin. Patients with both HIV and MDR-TB face complicated clinical management, fewer treatment options and poor treatment outcomes.

Outbreaks of MDR-TB among people with HIV have been documented in hospital and other settings, especially in Eastern Europe and in southern African countries with a high HIV prevalence. People with HIV with suspected drug-resistant TB should be tested using Xpert MTB/RIF where possible, since this test is more sensitive for detecting TB among people with HIV and rapidly detects rifampicin resistance, thus greatly shortening the time to diagnose and treat MDR-TB.

The burden of MDR-TB can be reduced by strengthening HIV prevention, improving infection control and improving collaboration between HIV and TB control activities, with special attention to the groups at the highest risk of MDR-TB and HIV infection, such as people who inject drugs and those exposed in congregate settings.
4.2.2. **Bacterial pneumonia**

This can occur in immune-competent individuals but in HIV-infected patients, particularly those infected with S. pneumonia; incidence of bacteremia accompanying pneumonia is increased compared with that in individuals who are not HIV infected. Bacterial pneumonia occurs during the whole spectrum of HIV disease, but tends to be more severe and recurrent as the CD4 counts drops significantly; in addition pneumonia can concomitantly present with sinusitis and/or bacteremia. If not treated promptly, extra pulmonary complications like empyema, meningitis, pericarditis, hepatitis and arthritis can follow. *Streptococcus pneumonia* and *Hemophylus influenzae* are the most common etiologies of community acquired pneumonia.

**Clinical Manifestation**

Typically the patient presents with sudden onset of cough, sputum production, chest pain, fever and/or shortness of breath.

**Diagnosis:**

The clinical suspicion is based on a history of acute symptoms presented over days to a few weeks and/or abnormal physical signs of systemic infection and consolidation in the affected lung/s. Radiologic imaging can assist in confirming the diagnosis of pneumonia.

**Treatment:**

For none sever pneumonia Amoxicillin 500mg TID for seven days or erythromycin 500 mg qid or doxycycline 100 mg BID are alternates. Avoid doxycycline in pregnancy. Alternative, Azithromycin 500 mg PO per day for three days, Clarithromycin 500 mg twice daily for seven days. If not improving after three days and if patient is adherent to the antibiotic, review and consider switching to IV regimen, Ceftriaxone 1-2 gm IV once day plus erythromycin 500 mg oral or IV four time a day.

Amoxicillin

For pediatric age group,

For none sever pneumonia Amoxicillin 40mg/kg divided in to three doses per day for seven days. From one month up to two years, Erythromycin 125 mg four times daily for seven days; 2-
8 years erythromycin 250 mg four time per day for seven days; for age groups above 8 years give erythromycin adult dose. If not improving after three days and if patient is adherent to the antibiotic, review and consider switching to IV Ceftriaxone 75-100 gm per kg IV/IM once a day or equally divided dosed twice a day for 7 to 10 days. Maximum dose 2-4 gm per day for seven days.

When the patient has presented with clinical evidence of severe pneumonia, which includes tachypnea (RR>30/minute), old age (>70 years), cyanosis, hypotension, systolic blood pressure <80mm Hg, multi-lobar involvement and altered mental status in adults, and chest in-drawing, grunting and presence of danger signs in children, admit for parenteral antibiotic treatment and supportive therapy or refer the patient if admission is impossible. Tachypnea for children: Birth to 2 months RR >60/minute, 2 months to 1 year, RR> 50/minute, 1 year to 5 years, > 40 and 5 years and above, RR> 30/minute

### 4.2.3. *Pneumocystis Pneumonia*

Pneumocystis pneumonia is caused by *Pneumocystis jiroveci* formerly known as pneumocystis carini pneumonia (PCP), a ubiquitous organism that is classified as a fungus but also shares biologic characteristics with protozoa. It commonly occurs when patients have significant immune suppression (CD4<200cells/mm3 or CD4 percentage < 14%).

**Clinical manifestation**

Typical clinical presentations are characterized by insidious onset of low grade fever, dry cough, and dyspnea exacerbated by exertion. Physical examination of ten reveals fever, tachypnea, tachycardia and scattered rales in the lungs but examination of the lungs can appear normal in some patients. In children highest incidence is seen between 2-6 months of age and is characterized by abrupt onset of fever, tachypnea, dyspnea and cyanosis.

**Diagnosis:**

Presumptive diagnosis of PCP is based on clinical judgement and typical chest X-ray findings revealing a perihilar interstitial infiltration with tendency to spread outwards. Note that the chest X-ray can be normal in 20% of patients. Definitive diagnosis of PCP is based on demonstration
of the organism from an induced sputum sample using special stains like Giemsa or methylamine silver stains, but these tests are not routinely done in Ethiopia.

**Treatment:**

Use Trimethoprim 15-25 mg/Kg, three or four times daily for 21 days. Close monitoring is necessary during the initial five days of treatment and if patient grows sicker, administration of oxygen is useful. In severely ill patients with marked respiratory distress and extensive chest X-ray findings, prednisolone has to be given simultaneously; 80mg for the first five days, 40 mg until 11 days and 20 mg until completion of intensive co-trimoxazole therapy. For severe cases of PCP in children provide prednisolone 2mg/kg per day for the first 7 - 10 days followed by a tapering regimen for the next 10 - 14 days. Toxicity of co-trimoxazole, like skin rash, bone marrow suppression, hepatitis and renal failure can be troublesome in some patients with advanced HIV disease and requires close monitoring.

Secondary prophylaxis after completion of the course of treatment with co-trimoxazole should be started (refer Table 4.2).

Alternative regimens for mild to moderate cases of PCP include:

1. Clindamycin 600 mg qid plus primaquine 15 mg bid

   or

2. Clindamycin 600 mg qid plus dapsone 100 mg daily.

Consider spontaneous pneumothorax in patients with sudden deterioration in clinical condition.

---

### 4.2.4. **Lymphoid Interstitial Pneumonitis (LIP)**

**Epidemiology:** LIP is one of the most common chronic lower respiratory conditions occurring in up to 25% of children with HIV/AIDS.

**Clinical manifestations:** Range from asymptomatic disease with isolated radiographic findings to bullous lung disease with pulmonary insufficiency. Symptomatic children present with insidious onset of tachypnea, cough, and mild to moderate hypoxemia with normal auscultatory
findings or minimal rales or wheezing. Progressive disease is accompanied by digital clubbing and symptomatic hypoxemia. Associated physical findings include generalized lymphadenopathy, hepatosplenomegaly and parotid enlargement.

**Diagnosis:** Usually based on clinical exam findings. Diffuse bilateral reticulonodular infiltrate on X-ray with mediastinal lymphadenopathy. It is important to exclude tuberculosis and other infectious etiology.

**Treatment:** Provide symptomatic treatment (hydration, oxygen). Use antibiotics if there is a superimposed bacterial infection. Bronchodilators may be helpful in mild to moderate disease. Corticosteroids are usually reserved for children with significant hypoxemia and symptoms of pulmonary insufficiency. Give prednisolone 1 – 2 mg/kg/24 hrs for 6 – 8 weeks and then taper as tolerated.
4.3. Management of Gastrointestinal Opportunistic Diseases

The GI OI diseases commonly manifest with diarrhoea, nausea and vomiting, dysphagia and odynophagia among others. There are a number of opportunistic and pathogenic organisms causing GI disease in patients infected with HIV most common ones being isospora belli, cryptosporidium, shigella and salmonella, CMV etc. A scenario of multiple concurrent GI infections is fairly common. The general principle of managing GI opportunistic infections is identifying and treating the specific offending agent providing supportive care to monitor situations such as fluid loss. A number of drugs can cause adverse effects that present with clinical manifestations referable to GIS which are similar to OIs of the GI, posing challenges in differential diagnosis.

4.3.1. Dysphagia and odynophagia

Dysphagia (difficulty in swallowing) and odynophagia (painful swallowing) are symptoms of esophagitis occurring at advanced stages of AIDS. They are usually caused by candida, HSV, CMV, and aphthous ulcers. As well as a sign of severe immunodeficiency, esophagitis also seriously impairs the patient’s nutritional status. Therefore prompt diagnosis and treatment are mandatory to avert nutritional complications and inability to swallow prescribed medications. Children present with reluctance to eat, excessive salivation, or crying while feeding. If thrush is associated with dysphagia, odynophagia, and/or retrosternal pain, consider oesophageal candidiasis but this can also occur in the absence of oral thrush. Thrush or oropharyngeal candida is characterized by white, painless, plaque-like lesions on the buccal surface and/or tongue.

**Diagnosis:** is frequently made on clinical grounds, but when facilities are available upper GI endoscopy with or without biopsy or contrast imaging may be done.

**Treatment:** Dysphagia and/or odynophagia are treated as oesophageal candida on clinical grounds, in particular when oropharyngeal candida is present. Patients are empirically treated with Fluconazole in presumptive oesophageal candida. If the response is unsatisfactory they are referred or investigated if facilities are available, to rule out other causes.

**Drug of choice:** Fluconazole 200 mg (3mg/kg/day in children) PO daily for 14 days
Alternatively, ketoconazole 200 mg (3-6 mg/kg/day daily in children) twice daily for 4 weeks.

Risk of recurrence after completing treatment may be high. If the patient is on ART, s/he should be investigated for treatment failure. Take necessary precautions regarding drug interactions especially with ketoconazole. Patients may need hospital admission for supportive care till the oesophageal symptoms improve and necessary long term treatments are started. If diagnosis suggests HSV esophagitis use acyclovir 400 mg po five times for 14 to 21 days.

### 4.3.2. Diarrhoea

Diarrhoea is defined as passing more than four loose or watery stools/day. It may be acute or chronic, persistent or intermittent. Diarrhoea is among the most frequent symptoms of HIV disease. Delay in treatment can result in fluid loss and hemodynamic instability. Chronic diarrhoea may also lead to nutritional deficiencies and wasting. Diarrhoea is caused by opportunistic or pathogenic organisms, such as viruses (including HIV), bacteria, protozoa, fungi, helminthic, non-infectious causes and drugs. (Diarrhoea occurs as an adverse reaction to a number of drugs).

Check the duration, volume, frequency, consistency of stools as well as any history of abdominal pain, tenesmus, nausea, vomiting, and presence of constitutional symptoms such as fever. Thorough physical examination is necessary to find out the state of hydration and the status of HIV disease.

**Laboratory evaluation:** Stool microscopy including modified acid fast stain

Stool culture when indicated (optional)

**Management:**

The most important first step is correction of fluid loss. Depending on the severity of dehydration, ORS or IV fluid therapy can be given. Patients with severe dehydration are admitted for intravenous fluid administration. In children zinc 20 mg per day for 10-14 days (10 mg per day for infants under 6 months of age) should be added.
If specific enteric pathogen is identified or strongly suspected on clinical grounds, it should be treated accordingly. Refer to the IMNCI module to manage dehydration.

**Table 4.6: Treatment of specific enteric pathogens**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Agent</th>
<th>CD4</th>
<th>Symptom</th>
<th>Diagnosis</th>
<th>Rx</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>E. hystolytica</td>
<td>any</td>
<td>bloody stool, colitis</td>
<td>Stool microscopy</td>
<td>Metronidazole</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Giardia</td>
<td>any</td>
<td>Watery diarrhoea</td>
<td>Stool microscopy</td>
<td>Metronidazole</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cryptosporidium</td>
<td>&lt;150</td>
<td>Watery diarrhoea</td>
<td>Modified AFB ART*</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Isospora belli</td>
<td>&lt;100</td>
<td>Watery diarrhoea</td>
<td>Modified AFB TMP-SMX</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Microsporidium</td>
<td>&lt;50</td>
<td>Watery diarrhoea</td>
<td>Giemsa stain</td>
<td>Albendazole</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CMV</td>
<td>&lt;50</td>
<td>Watery/bloody diarrhoea, colitis</td>
<td>Tissue biopsy</td>
<td>Ganciclovir</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*No specific treatment for Cryptosporidium but it improves with immune restoration following ART*

Patients with bloody diarrhoea but repeatedly negative stool results: empirical treatment with ciprofloxacin or norfloxacin (co-trimoxazole in children) can be given, especially when patient has constitutional symptoms such as fever.

**Symptomatic treatment:** In adults use anti-diarrhoeal agents Loperamide 4mg stat then 2mg after each bowel motion or Diphenoxylate 5mg QID. Necessary caution should be taken to avoid anti-diarrhoeal agents in bacterial or parasitic infectious colitis or enteritis, since toxic mega colon may occur.

Patients with chronic diarrhoea develop nutritional deficiencies of variable severity; therefore proper nutritional assessment and support are helpful.
4.3.3. Peri-anal problems

A number of chronic or acute peri-anal problems commonly occur in patients with HIV disease, particularly in advanced stages of immunodeficiency. These include recurrent peri-anal abscesses, chronic peri-anal fistula, peri-anal herpes (severe, persistent and extensive), and peri-anal warts (sometimes large with obstructive problems). Patients with peri-anal problems frequently go to local healers and receive different kinds of local therapy that usually complicate the situation.

Treatment of peri-anal abscess in adolescents and adults: It is not difficult to make the clinical diagnosis of peri-anal abscess. All patients with acute or chronic peri-anal condition must be thoroughly evaluated and per rectum done routinely. Peri-anal abscess may extend depending on the immunological status of the patient; therefore early treatment is mandatory to avoid this and more serious morbidity. If patients require surgical incision, it should be done promptly on first visit, or referral made if the surgery is unavailable. Otherwise, broad spectrum antibiotics such as amoxicillin-clavulanic acid (augmentin) alternatively amoxacillin or ampicillin must be administered in sufficient dose for at least 10 days. Palliative care including Sithz baths and analgesics are also important.

Peri-anal and/or genital herpes:

Latent or active infection with HSV I and II are common in the general population, and is usually mild in immune-competent persons. Severe cutaneous disease or visceral involvement is usually restricted to patients with advanced immunosuppression with a CD4 count <100 cell/mm³

The lesions become extensive, persistent, severe and sometimes bleeding. Unless thorough evaluation with regular inspection of genital and peri-anal areas is done, patients very often don’t complain about genital lesions. The response to Acycovir is gratifying if it is done in sufficient dose (400mg 4 to 5 X/d) and sufficient duration (10 days to 2 weeks in moderately severe or severe cases). There is risk of recurrence with severe immunodeficiency. In such cases repeat treatment and put patient on chronic HIV care including ART. Herpetic oro-labial infection is treated the same way as ano-genital herpes.
The treatment of anal and genital warts is particularly frustrating when they are large. Unlike other opportunistic infections the response to ART is not satisfactory. Patients who have very well responded immunologically with ART continue to suffer from the warts. Depending on the size, cauterization, podophyllin treatment and surgical debulking, etc may be tried. Patients should be referred to where these services are available.

Cervical cancer screening is an important test to prevent significant morbidity and mortality associated with HPV in women.

**Sexually transmitted infections and cervical cancer**

The epidemiological synergy between HIV and sexually transmitted infections (STIs) is well established, and they frequently coexist. Most of these infections are asymptomatic, especially among women. However, even asymptomatic STIs can cause complications, be transmitted to sexual partners and enhance HIV transmission. STI services should be an important part of comprehensive HIV care among adults and adolescents. Refer the revised STI guideline for syndromic management of STIs

Cervical cancer is a preventable disease and is curable if diagnosed and treated early. Women living with HIV have a higher risk of pre-cancer and invasive cervical cancer. The risk and persistence of HPV infection increases with low CD4 count and high HIV viral load. Cervical cancer screening leads to early detection of precancerous and cancerous cervical lesions that will prevent serious morbidity and mortality. All women with HIV should therefore be screened for cervical cancer.

**HCV/HIV and HBV/HIV co-infection management**

**HCV HIV co infection management**

HIV patients are among high risk groups for HCV and should be given priority for screening. Therefore all HIV patients should be screened and confirmation VL test should be done for HCV screened positives.

Anti-HCV rapid diagnostic test (RDT) or immunoassay (IA) can be used for screening and HCV RNA viral load test using either quantitative or qualitative PCR should be used to confirm chronic HCV infection.

All chronic HCV infected individuals should be treated to eradicate the virus and achieve cure so that complications can be avoided. Follow up quantitative or qualitative HCV RNA viral load is required to confirm if the patient has achieved SVR. This should be performed 12 weeks after the completion of therapy.
Treatment HCV in HIV infected individuals is not different from non HIV infected or HCV mono-infected. All combination of DAA including SOF/LDV, SOF/RIB and SOF/DCV can safely be used. However attention should be given to drug-drug interaction interactions and shared side effects like head ache, fatigue and anemia.

According to the VH prevention and control guidelines the followings are treatment cited options (please consult the national VH prevention and control guideline for further reference):

- Sofosbuvir 400 mg oral once daily + Daclatasvir 60mg oral once daily for 12 weeks (dose of DCV be adjusted to 90 mg with Efavirenz and 30 mg with Atazanavir/r)
- Sofosbuvir 400mg oral once daily + Ledipasvir 90mg oral once daily for 12 weeks.
- For cirrhotic patient the treatment duration will be extended to 24 weeks for the above treatment options.
- Sofosbuvir 400mg oral once daily + Ribavirin 1000 mg (weight < 75kg), 1200mg (weight ≥ 75Kg) twice on divided doses for 24 weeks.

It is recommended to thoroughly evaluate Chronic HCV infected person with cirrhosis and treatment duration be decided according to the genotype, type of drug selected and addition of ribavirin.

**HBV/ HIV co infection management**

HIV coinfection has been shown to have a profound impact on almost every aspect of the natural history of HBV infection and includes more rapid progression to cirrhosis and HCC, higher liver-related mortality, and decreased treatment response compared with persons without HIV coinfection.

HIV/HBV-co-infected persons also demonstrated more rapid HIV disease progression compared to those who were HIV-infected alone, and had an impaired recovery of CD4 cells.

HIV patients are among the high risk groups for HBV and should be given priority for screening. i.e all HIV patients should get screened for HBV and evaluated for chronic infection as per the national VH prevention and control guidelines. After test result, vaccination or treatment and care for reactive patients are recommended when resources permit.

**Treatment options for patients with HIV –HBV Co-infection:**

- ART should be initiated in all individuals with HIV regardless of WHO clinical stage or CD4 count in the following situations:
  - Individuals coinfected with HIV and HBV with evidence of severe chronic liver disease. During HBV/HIV co-infection if treatment is indicated for HBV, combination antiretroviral therapy should be initiated with drugs containing TDF + 3TC (or FTC) + EFV as a preferred regimen.
- For HIV positive patients who are co infected with HBV and qualify for treatment of both the diseases i.e. HIV and HBV, oral drug therapy is first line for these patients with
at least 2 of the drugs having activity against HBV like combination of Tenofovir, Emtricitabine/ lamuvidine and Efavirenz.

- The use of lamivudine as monotherapy in any of these diseases is contraindicated due to high YMDD resistance.
- When switching treatment in patients with HIV on ART failure, the regimen that will continue should have two of the drugs having activity against HBV
- If tenofovir-associated renal toxicity occurs, the dose of tenofovir should be adjusted according to the renal clearance.

NB: For further reference please consult the national Viral Hepatitis prevention and control guidelines

4.4. Management of Opportunistic Diseases of the Nervous System

Neurological manifestations of HIV can occur at any time from viral acquisition to the late stages of AIDS; they are varied and may affect any part of the nervous system including the brain, spinal cord, autonomous nervous system and the peripheral nerves. HIV affects the nervous system in 70-80% of infected patients. The effect may be due to direct effect of the virus, opportunistic infections and/or malignancies. For certain neurological manifestations a single aetiology is responsible while in others it is due to multiple causes.

Most life-threatening neurological complications of HIV occur during the severe immunodeficiency state and specific aetiological diagnosis in the Ethiopian setting is often a major challenge. Thus, this unit attempts to guide the management of common opportunistic infections and other treatable conditions in the nervous system.

Neurological complications in HIV patients may be due to:
- HIV (HIV encephalopathy)
- OIs (Toxoplasmosis, cryptococcal meningitis)
- Neurosyphilis
- Malignancies (primary CNS lymphoma) and
- Drugs (e.g. EFV, etc)
Diagnosis of neurological disorders in HIV in our setting depends on the history and standard neurological examinations. In view of this, health care providers must be able to perform a physical examination to detect neurological abnormalities. There can be single or multiple abnormal neurological findings in the same patient necessitating holistic neurological evaluation. Thus the examination should include assessment of:

- Mental status comprising cognitive function, orientation and memory.
- Cranial nerves
- Motor function including DTR
- Sensation

### 4.4.1. *Toxoplasma gondii Encephalitis*

Toxoplasmic encephalitis (TE) is caused by the protozoan Toxoplasma gondii. Disease appears to occur almost exclusively because of reactivation of latent tissue cysts. Primary infection occasionally is associated with acute cerebral or disseminated disease. Sero-prevalence varies substantially in different communities; in Ethiopia, general prevalence is about 80%.

**Clinical Manifestations**

Among patients with AIDS, the most common clinical presentation of T. gondii infection is focal encephalitis with headache, confusion, or motor weakness and fever. Patients may also present with non-focal manifestations, including only non-specific headache and psychiatric symptoms. Focal neurological abnormalities may be present on physical examination, and in the absence of treatment, disease progression results in seizures, stupor, and coma.

**Diagnosis**

HIV-infected patients with TE are almost uniformly seropositive for anti-toxoplasma immunoglobulin G (IgG) antibodies. The absence of IgG antibody makes a diagnosis of toxoplasmosis unlikely but not impossible. Anti-toxoplasma immunoglobulin M (IgM) antibodies usually are absent. Quantitative antibody titres are not useful for diagnosis. Definitive diagnosis of CNS toxoplasmosis requires a compatible clinical syndrome; identification of one or
more mass lesions by CT, MRI, or other radiographic testing; and detection of the organism in a clinical sample. In the absence of imaging support, empirical treatment is justified when patients present with focal neurological findings and the CD4 count is < 200 cells μL. Failure to respond to conventional therapy, based on presumptive clinical diagnosis within a week or two of initiation of therapy, suggests the diagnosis to be unlikely. With empirical treatment for toxoplasmosis, nearly 90% of patients will demonstrate clinical improvement within days of starting therapy. Radiological evidence of improvement is usual after 14 days of treatment.

**Treatment**

**1st line regimen in the Ethiopian context is:**

Trimethoprim/sulfamethoxazole 80/400, oral, 4 tablets 12 hourly for 28 days, followed by 2 tablets 12 hourly for 3 months in adults.

In children 10mg of trimethoprim + 50mg of sulfamethoxazole/kg per dose every 12 hours for 28 days followed by maintenance therapy at 50% reduced dosage for three months.

**Secondary prophylaxis:** use co-trimoxazole 960mg daily for adults and in children refer to Table 4.3

**Alternative regimen**

**I.** Sulfadiazine, 1-2 gm p.o.q 6h for six weeks or 3 weeks after resolution of lesion

S/E: crystal urea, rash

C/I: severe liver, renal and hematological disorders; known hypersensitivity to Sulfonamides

Dosage/form: 500 mg tablets,

PLUS

Pyrimethamine

Loading dose of 200 mg once, followed by:

Pyrimethamine 50-75 mg/day

S/E: rash, fever and bone marrow depression (neutropenia and thrombocytopenia)

C/I: folate deficiency

Dosage/form: 25 mg tablets
PLUS
Folinic acid (Leucovorin): 10-20 mg/d
S/E: allergy
Dosage/form: 5 and 10 mg tablets

OR

II. Pyrimethamine and Folinic Acid (Leucovorin): (standard dose)

PLUS
Clindamycin: 600 mg q 6 hrs
S/E: toxicities include fever, rash, nausea and diarrhoea (including pseudomembranous colitis or diarrhoea related to Clostridium difficile toxin)

Adjunctive corticosteroids should be used for patients with radiographic evidence of midline shift, signs of critically elevated intracranial pressure or clinical deterioration within the first 48 hours of therapy. Dexamethasone (4 mg every six hours (0.15mg/kg/dose every 6 hours for children)) is usually chosen and is generally tapered over several days and discontinued as soon as possible.

Anticonvulsants should be administered to patients with a history of seizures, but should not be given routinely for prophylaxis to all patients with the presumed diagnosis of TE. Careful attention needs to be paid to any potential drug interactions.

4.4.2. Cryptococcal infection

Cryptococcal meningitis is one of the most important opportunistic infections and a major contributor to high mortality before and after ART is initiated. The main reasons for this high death rate include delayed presentation, together with poor availability and high cost of treatment. Furthermore, there are no standardized guidelines applicable to resource-limited settings for the diagnosis and management of cryptococcal disease. Most HIV-associated cryptococcal infections are caused by Cryptococcus neoformans, in HIV-infected patients,
cryptococcosis commonly presents as a subacute meningitis or meningoencephalitis with fever, malaise, and headache. Classic meningeal symptoms and signs, such as neck stiffness and photophobia, occur in only one-quarter to one-third of patients. Some patients experience encephalopathic symptoms, such as lethargy, altered mentation, personality changes, and memory loss that are usually a result of increased intracranial pressure, thought to result from impaired cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) absorption, or yeast infection of the brain.

**Diagnosis**

i. LP and CSF analysis:
- The opening pressure may be markedly elevated.
- CSF analysis
  o Protein= 30-150 mg/dl
  o WBC =0-100/mm3 (monocyte)
  o Culture =positive 95-100%
  o Indian ink =positive 60-80%
  o Cryptococcal Ag > 95 % sensitive and specific

If it is not possible or contraindicated to do LP, serum cryptococcal antigen can be used for diagnosis.

**Management**

Requires hospitalization and evaluation by physician

Phases of management:

1. **Induction phase (2 weeks)**

   **Option A.** High dose fluconazole- Fluconazole 600 mg twice daily alone (In children 12mg/kg in two divided doses):

   **Option B.** Amphotericin B + fluconazole:
   Amphotericin 0.7-1 mg/kg/day + fluconazole 800 mg/day

2. **Consolidation phase (8 weeks)**
**Option A.** Fluconazole 800 mg/day (In children 12mg/kg/day)

**Option B.**
Fluconazole 400-800 mg/day

Maintenance treatment (or secondary prophylaxis) - Fluconazole 200 mg daily (in children 6mg/kg/day)

**Additional Points about Cryptococcal Meningitis**

1. **Management of elevated Intracranial pressure (ICP):**
Management of increased ICP is critical as >90% of deaths in the first two weeks and 40% of deaths in weeks 3-10 are due to increased ICP. Failure to manage elevated ICP is the most common and most dangerous mistake in management (Since the ICP is non-communicating hydrocephalus there is no risk of CSF tapping within the recommended volume).
   - Daily serial LP should be done to control increased ICP by drawing 20-30 ml of CSF based on patient’s clinical response. Signs of ICP include headache, altered mental status, meningismus and changing in hearing or vision should be closely monitored, if possible opening pressure should be measured.

   - There is no role for acetazolamide, mannitol, or corticosteroids to reduce intracranial pressure.

2. **Discontinuation of maintenance treatment (secondary prophylaxis)**
When patients are stable and adherent to ART and anti-fungal maintenance treatment for at least one year and have a CD4 cell count of greater than or equal to 200 cells/mm3 (two measurements six months apart).

3. **Timing of ART initiation**
   - Immediate ART initiation is not recommended in HIV-infected patients with cryptococcal meningitis due to the high risk of IRIS, which may be life-threatening.
   - ART initiation should be deferred until there is evidence of a sustained clinical response to anti-fungal therapy, and
   - After 2-4 weeks of induction and consolidation treatment with amphotericin B-containing regimens combined with fluconazole, or
• After 4-6 weeks of induction and consolidation treatment with high-dose oral fluconazole regimen

**Poor prognostic signs**
- Extra CNS manifestation (especially pulmonary)
- Altered mental status
- Low CSF WBC cell count less than 20 cells/µL
- High CSF cryptococcal antigen titer

**Prevention of cryptococcal disease**
According to the pilot study conducted by MOH in collaboration with CHAI and ICAP-CU from June 2015 to July 2016, in 22 high case load facilities in all regions, the proportion of newly enrolled clients with CD4 count less than 100 was 25.88%. In the same study the prevalence of clients screened positive for criptococcal antigenemia was high (9.9%).

The use of routine serum or plasma CrAg screening in ART-naive adults followed by pre-emptive antifungal therapy if CrAg positive to reduce the development of cryptococcal disease, should be considered prior to ART initiation in:

patients with a CD4 count less than 100 cells/mm³; and
b. where this population also has a high prevalence (≥3%) of cryptococcal antigenemia.
Fig 4.xx Decision-Making Guide for Cryptococcal Screening

**CrAg Negative**
- No Fluconazole

**CrAg Positive**
- Reflex cryptococcal antigen screening
- For all CD4<100 specimens

**CrAg Positive**

**Symptomatic**
- Contact patient for urgent follow-up
- Screen for symptoms of meningitis
- Check for other special situations

**Asymptomatic**

**LP +Ve**
- Perform Diagnostic LP
- Treat for Cryptococcal meningitis as per the national ART guideline.

**LP -Ve**
- Initiate ART after two weeks of therapy
  - Fluconazole 400 mg daily for 8 weeks,
  - Then 200mg daily until CD4 > 200 for at least 6 months on ART

**Initiate ART**

**Entry in to HIV care**
- Perform CD4 count

*Patient is symptomatic for meningitis if he/she has any of the following conditions:*
- Headache > 24 hours.
- Fever
- Confusion or coma
- Blurry vision
- Neck stiffness

¥ Other special situations include:
- Patients on TB medication
- Patients with previous history of cryptococcal disease
- Pregnant or breast feeding mothers
- Clinical liver disease
- Children
Peripheral neuropathies are among the most common causes of painful legs in HIV infection; they arise as a complication of HIV infection itself, of drug therapy, or of other metabolic or organ dysfunction or nutritional deficiencies. Distal symmetrical sensory polyneuropathy is the most common presentation but mononeuropathies can also occur. The neuropathies associated with HIV can be classified as:

- Primary, HIV-associated
- Secondary causes related to medications (ddI, d4T, INH), OIs or organ dysfunctions

**Diagnosis:** Peripheral neuropathy diagnosis in HIV-infected patients is based on the clinical picture presenting with pain, tingling sensations, paresthesia or numbness. Physical examination can reveal depressed or absent ankle reflex, decreased sensitivity to different modalities of sensation and in severe cases, difficulty in walking. The feet and sometimes the hands are involved in symmetrical distribution. The diagnosis can be supported by electro diagnostic studies including electromyography (EMG) and nerve conduction studies (NCS) when available. Blood tests are frequently obtained to exclude other causes of neuropathy. In most instances, however, diagnosis is almost always clinical.

**Treatment**
- Avoid the offending agent if identified
- Substitute or switch drugs such as d4T/DDI when the neuropathy is severe
- Remove other drugs associated with peripheral neuropathy
- Supplement vitamin intake for all patients including concomitant administration of pyridoxine with INH.
- Adjuvants for pain management (such as Amitriptilin, carbamazepin) indicated for patients with pain and paresthesias.

**Monitoring of events**
- Recognize presence of peripheral neuropathy
- Assess severity at each clinical visit
• Avoid drugs causing neuropathy

4.5. Cutaneous manifestations

The skin is an organ frequently affected by OIs; early manifestations of HIV infections frequently occur in the skin. Different kinds of OIs, such as herpes zoster, and other viral, fungal and bacterial infections occur in the skin. Manifestations of adverse drug reactions and non-infectious conditions also occur in the skin. Some skin reactions to drugs such as Nevirapine may be life-threatening. In most instances diagnoses of skin disorders with HIV disease are made on clinical grounds. Most skin disorders in HIV disease can be cured or ameliorated, but a few fail to improve even with good general clinical and immunological responses to ART.

Pruritis is the most common dermatologic symptom in HIV infected patients. It can be localized indicating primary skin lesion, or generalized that may or may not indicate primary skin lesions. In many patients pruritus may be severe and not amenable to available therapy. The most common skin conditions associated with pruritis in patients with AIDS include the following:

1. Excessive dryness of the skin (Xerosis cutis)
2. Eczemas like seborrheic dermatitis or contact dermatitis
3. Folliculitis that may include infections by Staphylococcus aureas or hypersensitivity to insects
4. Drug eruptions
5. Scabies
6. Intertrigo (Candida, tinea, herpes simplex)

In most patients, diagnosis can be established by examining the lesions. However, as immune deficiency advances it may be useful to use investigations such as biopsy to diagnose specific dermatosis or use staining and culture to diagnose specific infections.

4.5.1. Etiological Classification of Skin Disorders in HIV Disease

Skin disorders in HIV infected patients can occur due to infections, neoplasm, and hypersensitivity to foreign agents including drugs, or to unknown causes. Nevertheless, infections are commonly seen in clinical practice; refer to the following table:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Infections</th>
<th>Disease</th>
<th>Clinical presentations</th>
<th>Treatment</th>
<th>Remark</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bacterial</td>
<td>Cellulitis</td>
<td>Poorly defined erythema. Pus and crust at the site plus signs of inflammation</td>
<td>Amoxicillin 500mg tid for ten days or erythromycin 500mg qid if allergic to penicillin.</td>
<td>Mostly encountered in lower extremities and often unilateral.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Impetigo</td>
<td>Erythematous small papules usually limited to few lesions coalescing into crusted plaques.</td>
<td>Use topical antibiotic; use amoxicillin for extensive disease.</td>
<td>Usually a superficial lesion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Carbuncle</td>
<td>Nodular lesion with extensions to the deeper structure. Signs of inflammation present.</td>
<td>Use cloxacillin 500 mg qid for ten days.</td>
<td>Involves the trunk as well as extremities.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Viral</td>
<td>Herpes simplex</td>
<td>Painful vesicular lesion around mouth or genitalia. Recurrent and extensive; difficult to eradicate during advanced immune deficiency</td>
<td>Acyclovir 400 mg tid for ten days.</td>
<td>If chronic (&gt; one month) indicates eligibility for ART.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Herpes zoster</td>
<td>Painful and vesicular eruptions with dermatomal distribution. When healed, scar will remain.</td>
<td>Acyclovir 800 mg 5 X per day for seven days. Monitor renal function.</td>
<td>When it involves the eyes it is a medical emergency. Do not give acyclovir if duration is &gt;72 hours.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Warts/verucae</td>
<td>Painless flat to raised warts over fingers or genitalia. In advanced</td>
<td>Podophyllin Imiquinod Cryotherapy</td>
<td>premalignant and risk for cervical cancer</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
4.5.3. Pruritic Papular Eruption

Pruritic papular eruption is common among HIV infected patients causing substantial morbidity in sub-Saharan Africa. Its prevalence ranges from 12-46% and it is uncommon in HIV negative patients (PPVof 82-87%, and may play role in diagnosing HIV). The pathogenesis is unknown but it may be related to hypersensitivity to arthropod bites. In extreme form, eosinophilia and eosinophilic infiltrates of the skin are present. Severity of rash often correlates with CD4 count. The clinical manifestation is intensely pruritic, discrete, firm papules with variable stages of development and predilection for extremities, though they can involve trunk and face.
Excoriation results in pigmentation, scarring and nodules. Treat with topical steroid and oral antihistamines; however it is often refractory to treatment and hence short course prednisolone may be used. HAART is often effective.

### 4.6. Visceral Leishmaniasis

Visceral leishmaniasis (VL) is a systemic parasitic illness, transmitted primarily by the phlebotomine sand fly from animal or human reservoirs. Visceral Leishmaniasis is endemic in Ethiopia, with patchy distribution in the southern and north-western lowlands. The causative parasite is L. Donovani. VL has emerged as a major OI associated with HIV. In HIV patients, VL represents reactivation of latent infection with Leishmania parasite.

**Clinical features:** The cardinal signs of VL in patients with HIV infection are unexplained fever, splenomegaly and pancytopenia (anaemia, leucopenia and thrombocytopenia). Presentation may not be typical. The bone marrow is packed with parasites but two-thirds of cases have no detectable anti Leishmanial antibodies. CD4+ cell count in co-infected patients is usually <300 cells/ml.

**Diagnosis:**

Parasitological diagnosis: Isolation of the organism from material taken from reticuloendothelial tissue and examined with Giemsa, Wright’s or Leishmanial stain.

Immunological diagnosis

- Antibody detection
- Leishmanial test is negative

**Treatment:** Ambisome40mg/kg, require longer treatment and more liable to relapse.

**Treatment of relapsed patients:** These are patients who are slower to respond and have a higher chance of further relapse and of becoming unresponsive to anti-monal drugs.

Treatment- same as above.

### 4.7. Screening for co-morbidities

People living with HIV have got increased risk of non AIDS defining chronic diseases such as diabetes mellitus, cardiovascular illnesses, malignancies, chronic liver disease and chronic renal disease. With the advent of ART people are living longer, hence they are at risk for age related
diseases. Therefore, screening of PLHIV for these co-morbidities during every visit is a critical component of the care and treatment package.
CHAPTER FIVE: Service delivery

Introduction

Most of the time health services are organized primarily to provide episodic acute care. As HIV begins to become a manageable chronic condition, program managers and care providers need to consider how current health delivery systems can be reorganized to provide chronic care.

Once people are diagnosed and enrolled in chronic care, follow-up visits should be scheduled and planned. Waiting until people present with symptoms or preventable complications is costly and inefficient. People living with HIV require care that anticipates their needs at different stages of the care continuum. Compared with the acute care model, planned chronic care models provide opportunities for prevention, early identification of issues and timely intervention.

Chronic care requires broad support for people living with HIV from their communities and health care teams to stay in care, adhere to treatment and cope with stigma. People living with HIV and their families need to be informed about HIV infection and the anticipated side effects of medicines and supported to adhere to treatment. Health care teams play an important role in linking people living with HIV with community-level interventions, resources and support.

This chapter provides broad guidance in three operational and service delivery areas:

1. Differentiated care: addressing the diversity of needs of people in care such as appointment spacing
2. Recommendations to strengthen the continuum of treatment and care:
   • Linkage from HIV testing to enrollment in care:
   • Retention;
   • Adherence;
   • Frequency of clinic visits;
   • Task shifting;
   • Decentralization;
   • Integration, and
• Adolescent-friendly health services.

3. Special considerations for continuity and high quality of service delivery:
• Quality service delivery;
• Ensuring a stable supply chain of ARVs, and
• Laboratory and diagnostic services.

5.1. Differentiated Care

Continuing to provide ART to a large and growing number of individuals poses a significant challenge to health systems in resource limited setups where there is a shortage of clinical staff. The challenge is highlighted by substantial rates of attrition reported across ART programs. The pace of ART enrolment will likely further increase in the coming years with recommendations issued by WHO in 2016 to change the eligibility criteria for ART initiation as Ethiopia has also recently endorsed the recommendations.

The challenges of further scaling up ART to those in need and improving retention in care for those on ART require continued adaptations in the models of healthcare delivery to the reality of people’s lives. As national, regional and district teams address the various challenges, lessons from innovative models of ART delivery can help shape the next stages of HIV care and treatment scale-up.

To accommodate the growing number of stable individuals on ART and improve retention in care and health outcomes, innovative service delivery models have been developed and WHO reported on their emerging importance in 2014. Of these models, Ethiopia adopted appointment spacing model of HIV care.

The appointment spacing model of care is implemented as per the outline presented in the framework below (see table 5.1. ). ‘Clients classified as “stable” will be included in this care model. In addition to the appointment spacing model of care, to alleviate the burden of high load facilities, offloading of patients will be done side by side through appropriate counseling and referral to the nearby health centers or low load facilities.

In the appointment spacing care model, stable clients will be appointed every six months for clinical visit and medication refill. Some clients who refused the six months appointment or have
inconveniences with the long spacing of the appointment will pick their medication at the third month from pharmacy or a pharmacy refill will be done every three months. Clients in the new care model should also get additional supports like arrangement of treatment supporter at home level among their family members, and arrangement of adherence reminders like alarm and education on how to maintain the drug quality at home level. Clients should be counseled and encouraged to disclose their status and to participate in peer support groups or to be a member of PLHIV associations. Those clients who disclosed their status will get adherence support from PLHIV associations via home visits or telephone follow up.

After appropriate classification based on the criteria below, clients should be informed and give verbal consent on the frequency of the service delivery. Eligibility for each category and adherence should be monitored continuously according to the appointment spacing model of HV care client classification tool (Annex __). Through continuous assessment and based on their current needs, patients may move between the categories or groups over the course of their lifetime in care.

**Patient classification based on their care needs in the Ethiopian context:**

**Category 1a:** People, who present when well, potentially with higher CD4 cell counts,

**Category 1b:** Pregnant/Breast feeding women with no other complications, rapidly growing children (0–5 years old) and adolescents with no advanced disease or other complications.

**Category 2:** People with advanced disease are defined as those presenting to care with a CD4 count below 200 cells/mm3 or WHO disease stages 3 and 4.

**Category 3:** Those who are already on ART but need careful monitoring to ensure timely action as required (Treatment failure suspects, patients with other chronic comorbidities, patients with identified adherence barriers.

**Category 4:** Stable individuals are defined as those who have received ART for at least one year and have no adverse drug reactions that require regular monitoring and have good understanding of lifelong adherence and evidence of treatment success (i.e. two consecutive viral load measurements below 1000 copies/mL) with no current illnesses excluding children, adolescents, pregnant and lactating women. In the absence of viral load monitoring, rising CD4 cell counts or
CD4 counts above 200cells/mm³, an objective adherence measure either from the clients self-report or by doing pill count, can be used to indicate treatment success.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Patient group/category</th>
<th>Minimum care package/services</th>
<th>Locaton of Service delivery</th>
<th>Provider of service</th>
<th>Frequency of service delivery</th>
<th>Additional support required</th>
<th>Remark</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Category 1a:</strong> People, who present when well, potentially with higher CD4 cell counts,</td>
<td>• Clinical and lab evaluation&lt;br&gt;• OI screening and prophylaxis if needed&lt;br&gt;• ART initiation&lt;br&gt;• additional and targeted adherence and retention support in order to commit to lifelong ART</td>
<td>HC or Hospital based on consensus between the provider and the client</td>
<td>Prescriber/ nurse/ HO/Physician</td>
<td>Biweekly during the 1st month, monthly during month 2 to 6, Every three months then after, Assess for possible change of category after 12 months</td>
<td>Intensive adherence support during the first six months as they feel well and may be reluctant</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Category 1b:</strong> Pregnant/Breast feeding women with no other complications, rapidly growing children (0–5 years old) and adolescents</td>
<td>• Clinical and lab evaluation&lt;br&gt;• OI screening and prophylaxis if needed&lt;br&gt;• ART initiation if not already started&lt;br&gt;• additional and targeted adherence and retention support in order to commit to lifelong ART</td>
<td>HC or Hospital based on consensus between the provider and the client</td>
<td>Prescriber/ nurse/ HO/Physician</td>
<td>If client newly initiated Biweekly during the 1st month, monthly during month 2 to 6, Every three months then after</td>
<td>Intensive adherence support.</td>
<td>Rapidly growing Children and adolescents may need dose adjustment based on their weight</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Category 2: People presenting to care with advanced disease</td>
<td>Rapid initiation of ART (after appropriate baseline evaluation)</td>
<td>Hospital</td>
<td>Prescriber nurse/HO/Physician</td>
<td>As per the national treatment guideline and may be assessed for reclassification after stabilization</td>
<td>Additional adherence counseling and support by case managers</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Systematic screening for OIs;</td>
<td>• Provision of IPT and CPT;</td>
<td>• Intensive follow-up and monitoring</td>
<td>• Lab monitoring as per the guideline</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Category 3: Those who are already on ART but need careful monitoring to ensure timely action as required</td>
<td>Clinical care and lab monitoring,</td>
<td>Hospital</td>
<td>Prescriber Nurse/HO/Physician</td>
<td>Monthly and change of category if stabilized or issue settled</td>
<td>Provide enhanced adherence counseling and support if there is high viral load</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• additional adherence support</td>
<td>• Timely switch to second-line ART regimen in case of treatment failure</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Category 4: Stable individuals who are already on ART for ≥ 1 year excluding children, adolescents, pregnant and lactating women.</td>
<td>Clinical review and medication refill</td>
<td>HC or Hospital</td>
<td>Nurses</td>
<td>Every 6 months for clinical follow up and drug refill. If the client is not willing to be included in the six monthly follow up, a pharmacy drug refill will be arranged every other three months</td>
<td>Additional adherence counseling and support by case managers (at the facility) and community adherence groups, encourage disclosure, involve treatment/adherence supporters at home</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Adherence assessment and support</td>
<td>• Adherence counseling to Re-enforce the adherence practice</td>
<td>• Lab monitoring as per the guideline</td>
<td>Treatmen t supporter at home level, safety box</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The role of PLHIV and PLHIV associations

Networks of PLHIV offer a key mechanism for enhancing support to those who are affected, and ameliorating negative experiences of living with HIV. As programs encourage greater involvement of PLHIV, there is increasing engagement of affected communities in national responses to HIV, and PLHIV networks have the potential to maximize stakeholder contributions. In addition, approaches that increase engagement and empowerment can potentially shift the focus of PLHIV’s roles from representation to the building of individual and community capacity to promote health.

Expected outcomes

Assessments of the implementation of the appointment spacing differentiated service delivery model showed significant positive outcomes. From the patients’ perspective, the main benefit of the appointment spacing to ART delivery is to reduce the financial and time costs associated with frequent clinic visits and longer patient waiting time at the health facilities. The relationship between social support and improved adherence to treatment is also well established and the engagement of people living with HIV in service delivery can provide an additional accountability mechanism to ensure continuity and quality of care.

From the health system perspective, reducing clinic contact required for clinically stable ART populations and refocusing resources towards managing sick patients with complex clinical problems is a key objective, with anticipated reduction of staff workload and improvements in quality of care and program outcomes. At a wider perspective implementation of the appointment spacing model of care will have important contributions for meeting the targets of the three 90’s through improved adherence and retention in care.

5.2. Linkage from HIV testing to enrollment in care

Patient attrition following an HIV diagnosis is a huge global challenge, contributing to delayed ART initiation resulting in avoidable morbidity and mortality, suboptimal
treatment outcomes, increased cost of care, and preventable HIV transmission. Multiple factors may hinder successful linkage to care, including distance from HIV care sites, transport costs, disclosure-related concerns, stigma and long waiting times at the facility. Following an HIV diagnosis, a package of support interventions should be offered to ensure timely linkage to care for all people living with HIV. The following interventions have demonstrated benefit in improving linkage to care following an HIV diagnosis:

- **Streamlined interventions** to reduce time between diagnoses and engagement in care including:
  - enhanced linkage with case-management;
  - support for HIV disclosure;
  - patient tracing for those who failed to engage in care;
  - training staff to provide multiple services, and
  - streamlined services to accelerate time to initiation;

- **Peer support & navigation approaches for linkage, and**

- **Quality improvement approaches using data to improve linkage**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Good practices for linkage from HIV testing services include:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>- Integrated services, where HIV testing, HIV prevention, treatment and care, TB and STI screening and other relevant services are provided together at a single facility or site;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Providing on-site or immediate CD4 testing with same-day results;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Decentralized ART provision</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Support and involvement of trained lay providers who are peers and act as peer navigators, expert patients/clients and community outreach workers to provide support and to identify and reach people lost to follow-up;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Intensified post-test counselling by community health workers;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Promoting partner testing may increase rates of HIV testing and linkage to care, as may approaches in PMTCT settings that encourage male involvement.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Intimate partner notification by the provider, with permission, is feasible in some settings; it identifies more HIV-positive people and promotes their early referral to care.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
5.3 Disclosure

5.3.1. Disclosure in Children

Pediatric disclosure is an ongoing process and in the best of circumstances may be difficult. Adults struggle with the question of whether, when or how to tell children that they have HIV, often agonizing over how to find the right words. All families are unique and there are no set rules regarding when and how to disclose to children.

Children react to HIV disclosure in different ways and it is not uncommon for relatives to disagree about disclosing HIV-related information to children. Even amongst the HIV/care team there may be disagreement on the best approach. Disclosure has to be individualized taking into consideration the particular child, parent/s, family, household and community.

Advantages of Disclosure

✔ For the child
  - May feel relief at learning the cause of his/her illness
    - May help to stop self-blaming as cause of the sickness.
    - May feel more in control
    - May have greater open involvement in medical care decisions
    - Avoid situation of accidental disclosure (e.g., child overhears caregiver discussing)
    - May decrease disruptive behaviors
    - May improve adherence to medication
    - May improve social functioning and school performance
    - May be more willing to access health education, social support, peer support
    - Communicates respect for the child and build trust

✔ For the care giver
  - Relieves the stress and anxiety that accompanies secrecy and deception
  - Opportunity to develop trusting relationship and more open communication with child
Barriers to Disclosure

- Fear that the infected child will inappropriately disclose his/her HIV status, especially in families in which the diagnosis remains closely guarded
- Fear of stigma, rejection, and loss of support by the family/community
- Desire to protect the child from worrying about his/her future
- The possibility that the burden of learning of his/her HIV status will lead to depression or other mental health issues
- Feelings of guilt and shame may prevent HIV-infected caregivers from disclosing their own infection to their child

Disadvantage of non-disclosure

- Child blames him/herself
- Maintains false understanding of illness including the belief that they are being cured
- Parents may use forceful means to ensure child takes medication
- Child’s imagination creates unnecessary worry
- Becomes sexually active without knowing status
- No access to support
- Child may find out his/her status inadvertently/traumatic way
- Child may not trust caregiver in future

Improved cooperation from a child
Sharing positive messages with their child will lead to caregiver feeling less helpless and hopeless
Allow easier access to other services, care and support
Ways to Begin the Process

HIV disclosure is not a topic that comes naturally for family discussion, especially when children are involved. The best way for child to learn about his/her HIV status is through age-appropriate information shared by a loving and trusted caretaker. Disclosure to children should never happen casually, inadvertently or in the heat of anger or conflict. A child’s maturity and cognitive capacity varies and is not only dependent on age. It is important to tailor the discussion to the child’s cognitive level and to the child’s personal and individual situation. It is important to assess readiness of the entire family for disclosure and address potential barriers to disclosure (Table 12-1). It is also important to discuss benefits of disclosure which have both short and long term impact on the family.

**Disclosure can:**

- Help create a sense of closeness in the family
- Help reduce feelings of anxiety and isolation on the part of the parents/ caregiver
- Relieve the burden of living with the secret of being HIV-positive
- Help build social support networks
- Reduce the anxiety children experience when they suspect something is wrong; they will now have information to make better sense of the situation
- May improve adherence in a non-adherent child

Table5.1 Assessing Readiness for Disclosure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>The child</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Is the child symptomatic? Taking medications?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>How old is the child?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Is the child living with a sick parent or family member?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Is the child asking questions about HIV?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Does the child appear distressed, anxious or worried?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Is the child sexually active and at risk of contracting or spreading HIV?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The parent or caregiver</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Has the parent or caregiver been tested for HIV?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Is the parent or caregiver infected? Symptomatic? Taking medication?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Is the adult ill? Is s/he in need of help from children in the household?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Is the infected adult an important attachment figure for the child?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>The family or household</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• Are there any adults in the household with HIV infection? Who is aware?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Are other children in the household HIV-infected? Who is aware?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• How many family members are taking HIV-related medications?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Is the family unit cohesive, or characterized by separations and/or conflict?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>The community</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• Are testing and treatment generally available in the community?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Are there people in the community who are open about their own HIV status? Does the child know anyone in the community who is open about his/her HIV status?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• How strong is the stigma surrounding HIV in the community?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Are there risks to the family (isolation, discrimination) if inadvertent disclosure occurs?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Are there resources within the community for children – a youth group and/or trusted adults they can talk to?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Source: Columbia Pediatric Clinical Manual 2005
5.3.2. Planning for Disclosure

- Disclosure is not an event or a one-off conversation. It is a **PROCESS** that takes time and constant communication in an age-appropriate manner. It is important to prepare adequately for disclosure. This involves preparation, education, planning and follow-up (Table 12-2). Once the decision has been made to disclose to the child it is important to understand that the topic will have to be visited over and over again. It is important to give a clear message and listen actively; take cues from the child and avoid lecturing; the emphasis should be on asking directly and indirectly and listening. The following examples can serve as a guide:

- **Pre-schooler (4-6 years old):** Younger children if symptomatic generally want to know what will happen to them. They do not need to know their diagnosis but the illness must be discussed with them. Young children may feel responsible for the parent’s illness or just pretend nothing is happening. It is important to give reassurance and take cues from younger children.

- **School aged children (7-13 years):** Some may have difficulty coping with disclosure information leading to changes in behavior (acting out in school, i.e. fights, low grades, absenteeism, anger, crying fits, or no expression of emotion). Others may have concerns that other children in the school or community will make fun of them. Encourage them to ask questions; do not be disappointed if they do not react in the manner you expected.

- **Adolescents (14 years and older):** Adolescents should know of their HIV status. They must be fully informed in order to appreciate consequences for many aspects of their health, including sexual behavior and treatment decisions. Be supportive and non-judgmental. This is addressed in the adult care and treatment guidelines.

**Stage 1** This is for children around the age of six. If they are symptomatic they want to know what will happen to them. They do not need to be informed of their diagnosis but the illness must be discussed with them.

Start providing partial disclosure; communicate with the child as follows:

- You are taking medicines to keep you healthy
- You have body soldiers that keep you healthy
- Your medicines increase the number of body soldiers and keep them strong so you can stay healthy
• As long as your body soldiers are strong and you have many, you can do what you want to do in life.
• You need to take your medicines in the morning and evening, when your (mother . . .) gives them to you.

Stage 2 Once stage 1 understood, or if the child is school age (7-13 years) move on to Stage two and then to Stage three.

• Your body soldiers became weak because something was attacking them (“a germ”)
• If you take your medicines every day you keep the “germ” asleep so it can’t attack your body soldiers
• Body soldiers can then increase in number and stay strong to keep you healthy
• If you don’t take your medicines the “germ” could wake up and start attacking your soldiers
• May consider asking the child if he/she would like to know how many body soldiers they have
  o Check the file carefully first
    ▪ If CD4 trend is up, show child that their own “body soldier” numbers are going up because they have taken their medicines
    ▪ If CD4 trend not up, re-enforce previous messages (while looking into possible causes)
• Build on the story, introducing the concept of resistance
  o If you forget your medicine and the “germ” wakes up too often, he can become “tricky”; then your medicines may not work to keep him asleep

Make sure the child and caregiver are ready for disclosure. Some may have difficulty coping with disclosure information leading to changes in behavior (acting out in school, i.e. fights, low grades, truancy, anger, crying fits, and no expression of emotion). Others may have concerns that other children in the school or community will make fun of them. Encourage them to ask questions; do not be disappointed if they do not react in the manner you expected.
Stage 3

- Introducing the words HIV and CD4
  - Only proceed if child and caregiver are ready
  - Anticipate how the child might react

- In presence of caregiver,
  - As usual, ask child why taking medicines; congratulate for what he/she has learned
  - Ask child if he/she wants to know the other names for the soldiers and the bad guy
    - “germ” is a virus called HIV
    - “body soldiers” are called CD4 cells

- Ask child what he/she has heard about HIV and correct any misconceptions
- Choose words that avoid assigning blame, e.g. if child asks where he/she got HIV,
  - “some children are born with the virus / HIV, and we think that is what happened to you”
  - NOT “your mother gave it to you”

- Put new information back in the context of what the child has already learned
  - “as long as you keep taking your medicines well, keep the germ asleep and the soldiers strong, you can do everything you want to do in life”

- Continue to check understanding at each visit

N.B Full disclosure can be provided to most children over 10 years.

Each steps of disclosure should be documented on the patient’s chart.

Adolescents 14 years and older

Adolescents should know of their HIV status. They should be fully informed in order for them to appreciate consequences for many aspects of their health, including sexual behavior and treatment decisions. Be supportive and non-judgmental.

Post –disclosure assessments

Disclosure is a process that does not end with telling an HIV-infected child the name of their illness or diagnosis. After the HIV diagnosis has been disclosed to the infected child, follow-up
visits are needed to monitor the child and family’s understanding of the illness and their emotional and psychological adjustment.

Once the diagnosis has been explained to a child, it needs to be reinforced or regularly discussed as the child develops because many children will not have understood the full implications of the disease or diagnosis at the time of disclosure. For example, preadolescent children can cognitively understand the concepts about the virus but may be less likely to think of the future implications, such as transmission risks and safe sexual practices. As the child ages and matures, he/she will slowly understand and integrate the implications of the diagnosis into his/her life. Children’s perception of self, health, illness, and death evolve as they mature through different developmental stages.

Some children who learn of their HIV status may experience guilt and shame and may isolate themselves as a result of the stigma and secrecy surrounding the disease. Changes in behavior and school functioning may occur in these children and may be symptoms of depression. Patients and families who have a difficult adjustment to HIV disclosure without progress over time should be referred for mental health services and additional support. In young adolescents it will be important to discuss about modes of HIV transmission, sexuality and reproductive health.

**5.3.3. Disclosure in adults**

Among other priorities, testing and counselling programmes emphasize the importance of people with HIV disclosing their HIV status, particularly to sexual partners. Informing the sexual partners of an individual’s HIV infection is not only an effective means of halting the transmission of HIV, but informing partners allows access to care and support as well as further prevention efforts among the client’s partners and family.

Two main processes for informing partners of an individual’s HIV infection are disclosure and partner notification. Disclosure, or beneficial disclosure as it is often known, refers to actions by individuals themselves to notify their partners of their HIV serostatus. UNAIDS and WHO strongly recommend beneficial disclosure, when appropriate, as this process is voluntary, respectful of the autonomy and dignity of the affected individuals and mindful of maintaining
confidentiality. Providers of testing and counseling prefer that individuals use beneficial disclosure to inform those who need to know that they are infected. For the individual, his or her sexual partners, and family, beneficial disclosure allows for greater openness about HIV in communities and meets ethical imperatives. To encourage beneficial disclosure, it is needed to establish safe social and legal environments in which more people are willing and able to get tested for HIV and are empowered and encouraged to change their behavior according to the results. This can be done by expanding access to counseling and testing services; providing incentives to get tested in the form of greater access to community care, treatment and support; and removing disincentives to testing and disclosure by protecting people from stigma and discrimination and removing legal barriers.

Disclosure can be difficult as people may be afraid of the consequences: for example, the threat of rejection and violence by partners and family or discrimination in the community and workplace. In some cases, people may have limited knowledge of their partners and how to locate them, or may not know the identity of their partners or where they can be located. Although evidence of effectiveness of partner notification is limited in resource-limited settings, UNAIDS advises that partner notification—or ethical partner counseling—be based on the informed consent of the source client, and maintain the confidentiality of the source client, and where possible, protect individuals from physical abuse, discrimination and stigma that may result from partner notification. Ideally, partners of infected individuals should be encouraged to seek HIV testing and counseling, as this is a critical prevention and treatment tool in the control of HIV.

**How to discuss disclosure in adults**

- Ask the patient if he/she has disclosed his/her HIV test result or is willing to disclose the result to anyone.
- Discuss concerns about disclosure to partner, children, other family and friends.
- Assess readiness to disclose HIV status and to whom.
- Assess social support and needs (refer to support groups).
- Provide skills for disclosure (rehearsal can help).
- Help the patient make a plan for disclosure if now is not the time.
- Encourage attendance of the partner to consider testing and explore barriers. As couples may have different HIV status, partner testing is important.
• Reassure the patient that you will keep the result confidential and that disclosure is voluntary.

If the patient does not want to disclose the result:

• Reassure that the results will remain confidential.
• Explore the difficulties and barriers to disclosure. Address fears and lack of skills (help provide skills).
• Continue to motivate the client.
• Advise the client not to harm others.
• Offer to assist in disclosure (for example, talk with spouse).
• Offer another appointment and more help as needed (such as peer counselors or trained counselors).

For women, discuss benefits and possible disadvantages of disclosure of a positive result and involving and testing male partners. Men are generally the decision makers in most families and communities. Involving them will have greater impact on:

• Increasing acceptance of condom use, practicing safer sex and making appropriate reproductive choices.
• Helping to decrease the risk of suspicion and violence.
• Helping to increase support to their partners.
• Motivating to get tested.

Disadvantages of involving and testing the partner: danger of blame, possible violence, abandonment. Health worker should assess the risk of violence or suicide and discuss possible steps to ensure the physical safety of patients. Health worker should try to counsel the couple together, when possible.

5.4. Retention in Care

Retaining people living with HIV across the continuum of care is essential for optimal health outcomes. For people living with HIV who are receiving treatment, uninterrupted ART and continual monitoring are essential for sustained viral suppression and optimal treatment outcomes. Retention in ART programmes is more challenging in peadiatric populations,
postpartum women and men in general. Multiple factors may play a role in loss to follow-up, including distance to health facilities, lack of transport or inability to cover travel expenses, stigma and disclosure-related issues, being too sick and lack of understanding of the need for lifelong care.

**Good practices for retention across the continuum of care**

Optimizing retention in HIV care requires interventions at multiple levels of the health care system. Given the broad array of challenges and heterogeneity of barriers across settings, no single approach is likely to work for everyone in all settings. Improving the understanding of barriers and innovative strategies to address them are important.

Related transport costs and loss of income while seeking care serve as disincentives when health facilities are located far from the person’s home. Bringing services closer to communities, where feasible, reduces the indirect costs of care for the people living with HIV and their families and improves retention.

Waiting times at the facility during consultation are frequently high, especially in settings with a high burden of HIV infection. Reorganizing services, such as systems for appointment, triage, separating clinical consultation visits from visits to pick up medicine, integrating and linking services and family-focused care may reduce waiting times at the health facility.

Interventions harnessing social support have emerged as a promising approach to counteract the structural, economic, service delivery and psychosocial constraints that affect retention in care.

**Specific population considerations**

1) **Pregnant and breastfeeding women**

For pregnant women living with HIV, the transition between ART care and antenatal care/MNCH services is a potential point for loss to follow-up. Interventions include:

- Monitoring approaches to ensure that registers are aligned and that women are tracked and followed across different ART service delivery points;
- Peer support, such as mothers-to-mothers programmes, may improve transition across service delivery settings, and
- Peer adolescent support groups for adolescent pregnant women living with HIV.

2) **Children**

Caregivers are responsible for understanding the importance of retaining children in care, especially younger children. Disclosure to children typically occurs late, making it challenging to
discuss the importance of follow-up. WHO recommends age appropriate disclosure to children. Interventions include:

- Supporting caregivers to attend for regular follow-up;
- Reinforcing to the caregivers the importance of the process of disclosing to the child. This can begin early with age-appropriate messaging and tools.

3) Adolescents

Frequent clinic visits, time spent waiting for services and having to miss school discourages adolescents’ engagement in care. Negative health care provider attitudes, concerns regarding privacy and confidentiality and limited opportunity to discuss their concerns also act as barriers to retention for adolescents. Distance to facilities and out of pocket expenses may restrict their engagement. Interventions include:

- Service delivery models beyond the facility that support adolescents to engage in care, such as peer-based interventions and community-based services;
- Implementing adolescent friendly health service approaches to improve quality;
- Providing adolescent services at specific times or in separate areas with flexible appointment systems that accommodate school hours;
- Comprehensive services that address multiple needs, including psychosocial support and sexual and reproductive health, and
- Close monitoring of adolescents' engagement in care, rapid proactive follow-up and implementation of strategies for re-engagement.
Table 5.2 Summarizes the factors related to the health system and people receiving ART influencing retention and adherence with respective potential interventions.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Factors related to the health system</th>
<th>Possible interventions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| High direct and indirect costs of receiving care | • ART and related diagnostics and services free of charge at the point of care  
• Decentralize ART where feasible  
• Scheduled facility visits  
• Reduce waiting time at the facility level:  
• Appointment system  
• Separate clinical consultation visits from appointments for picking up medicines  
• Link, integrate and coordinate care |
| Stock-outs of ARV drugs | • Optimize pharmaceutical supply management systems to forecast, procure and deliver ARV drugs.  
• Use fixed-dose combinations to simplify forecasting and supply management systems |
<p>| Lack of a system for monitoring retention in care | • Implement systems for patient monitoring across the continuum of care, including cohort analysis and patient tracking systems |
| Lack of a system for transferring people across different points of care | • Interlinked patient monitoring system across services for HIV, TB, maternal and child health and PMTCT; system for transitioning from pediatric to |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Problem Area</th>
<th>Solution</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Adolescent and adult services and from maternal and child health and TB services to chronic HIV care</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pill burden and complex ARV drug regimens</td>
<td>• Use fixed-dose combinations to reduce the pill burden and simplify the regimens</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lack of accurate information for patients and their families and peer support</td>
<td>• Engage and integrate community health workers, case managers, adherence supporters, volunteers, people living with HIV in peer support, patient education and counseling, and community-level support</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adherence support</td>
<td>• Task shifting for involving case managers, adherence supporters and community health workers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Linking with community-level interventions and resources such as peer adherence support (community adherence support groups)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Using known effect reminder methods (such as text messaging)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Peer support also provides opportunities for in-person reminders</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Poor relationship between patient and care provider</td>
<td>• Train health workers on how to: reduce stigma; improve treatment preparedness,</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Lack of time for educating people in HIV care | • Task shifting and sharing among clinic team members  
• People living with HIV as patient experts and peer supporters  
• A team approach to care |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Adverse drug effects</td>
<td>• Preparedness and knowledge of how and when to self-manage adverse effects and when to return to the clinic</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Forgetfulness, life stress, stigma and discrimination | • Using text messaging to keep patients engaged  
• Peer and family support  
• Link to community support group |
| Comorbidity, substance and alcohol use disorders and mental health disorders | • Manage HIV with mental health disorders, alcohol and other substance use disorders and link with community and social support |
| Patient knowledge and beliefs related to HIV infection, its course and treatment | • Integrate the education of patients and their families and counseling, broader community literacy and education and community engagement |
5.5. Adherence to ART

WHO defines treatment adherence as “the extent to which a person’s behavior – taking medications, following a diet and/or executing lifestyle changes – corresponds with agreed recommendations from a health care provider” For ART, a high level of sustained adherence is necessary to suppress viral replication and improve immunological and clinical outcomes; decrease the risk of developing ARV drug resistance; and reduce the risk of transmitting HIV.

5.5.1. Barriers to adherence

Multiple factors related to health care delivery systems, the medication and the person taking ARV drugs may affect adherence to ART.

**Individual factors:** -may include forgetting doses; being away from home; changes in daily routines; depression or other illness; a lack of interest or desire to take the medicines; and substance or alcohol use.

**Medication-related factors:** -may include adverse events; the complexity of dosing regimens; the pill burden; and dietary restrictions.

**Health system factors:** - may include requiring people with HIV to visit health services frequently to receive care and obtain refills; travelling long distances to reach health services; and bearing the direct and indirect costs of care.

Lack of clear information or instruction on medication, limited knowledge on the course of HIV infection and treatment and adverse effects can all be barriers to adherence to ART.

Specific population groups face additional challenges to adherence, and these should be considered when implementing the recommended interventions.

**Pregnant and postpartum women**

The pregnancy and postpartum period presents significant biological, social and economic challenges that may affect treatment adherence. Pregnancy-related conditions such as nausea and vomiting may negatively affect treatment adherence. **Other individual factors include suboptimal understanding of HIV, ART and PMTCT, lack of partner disclosure and support, and**
fear of stigma and discrimination. Service delivery barriers include poor-quality clinical practices, gaps in provider knowledge and training, poor access to services and health worker attitudes.

Adolescents
Adolescents face specific challenges, including psychosocial issues such as peer pressure, the perceived need to conform and inconsistent daily routine. Adolescents are often left out of decisions and have limited opportunities to discuss their concerns, and there is limited availability of adolescent-specific treatment literacy and adherence counselling tools. For adolescents who are transitioning from pediatric to adolescent care, additional challenges may include assuming increased responsibility for their own care, issues relating to disclosure to peers or partners, difficulties in navigating the health-care system, lack of links between adult and pediatric services and inadequately skilled health workers.

Infants and young children
Successfully treating a child requires the commitment and involvement of a responsible caregiver. Parents and other family members of children living with HIV may themselves be living with HIV, and suboptimal HIV care and treatment for family members could result in suboptimal care for the child. Other challenges include lack of nutrition support, limited choice of paediatric formulations, poor palatability of liquid formulations, high pill or liquid volume burden, large pill size, frequent dosing requirements and difficulties in swallowing tablets.

People with mental health conditions and substance use
People with HIV with uncontrolled depressive symptoms are more likely to have poor adherence to ART. Adherence is complicated by mental health comorbidity that results in forgetfulness, poor organization and poor comprehension of treatment plans. Similarly, use of alcohol and other substances may also contribute to poor adherence to ART. Alcohol and substance use can lead to forgetfulness, poor organization and diversion of monetary resources.
5.5.2. Supportive Interventions

Interventions to optimize adherence to ART out-of-pocket payments at the point of care, using fixed-dose combination regimens for ART and strengthening drug supply management systems to reliably forecast, procure, and deliver ARV drugs and prevent stock-outs.

Efforts to support Programme-level interventions for improving adherence to ART include: avoiding imposing and maximize adherence should begin before ART is initiated. Developing an adherence plan and education are important first steps. Initial patient education should cover basic information about HIV, the ARV drugs themselves, expected adverse effects, preparing for treatment and adherence to ART. Adherence preparation should not delay treatment initiation, when prompt action is necessary.

Patient education and counseling and peer support
Patient education and counseling are essential both when ART is initiated and throughout the Course of treatment. Informing and encouraging people receiving ART and their families and Peers are essential components of chronic HIV care Substance use and mental health interventions Studies indicate that improving well-being by treating depression and managing substance use disorders improves HIV treatment outcomes.

Nutritional support
Nutrition assessment, care and support are essential components of HIV care. HIV programmes should ensure that existing national policies on nutritional support are observed when it is necessary and feasible to maximize adherence to ART and achieve optimal health outcomes in food-insecure settings.
**Reminder and engagement tools**

New recommendation mobile phone text messages could be considered as a reminder tool for promoting adherence to ART as part of a package of adherence interventions other patient reminder. Other patient reminder tools include alarms, phone calls, diaries and calendars and are used to send brief reminders about the timing of ARV drugs, drug dosage and appointments.

### 5.5.3. Monitoring adherence to ART in routine Program and care settings

Objective monitoring of adherence to ARV drugs is necessary for effective and efficient treatment planning and ongoing support. Each facility visit brings opportunity for assessing and supporting treatment adherence. Effectively monitoring adherence requires a combination of approaches based on human and financial resource capacity, acceptability to people living with HIV and to health workers and the local context.

**Viral load monitoring**

These guidelines recommend viral load monitoring to diagnose and confirm treatment response and failure. Viral load monitoring is considered the gold standard for monitoring adherence and confirming treatment response. Although treatment failure is often caused by lapses in adherence to ART, it may also result from other factors (such as drug resistance, drug stock-outs drug interactions or malabsorption). Viral load monitoring must therefore be combined with other approaches to monitoring adherence. These approaches should also be considered as a way to provide additional information about possible causes of virological failure or to support adherence monitoring in settings where viral load testing is not available.

Following an initial high viral load (>1000 copies/mL), an adherence intervention be carried out prior to conducting a second viral load test. Viral load monitoring also has a high potential to motivate adherence.

**Pharmacy refill records**

Pharmacy refill records provide information on when people living with HIV pick up their ARV drugs. When people obtain pharmacy refills at irregular intervals, this may indicate non-adherence to ART; however, in many routine care settings, people may pick up their medications when receiving care irrespective of their adherence level. This behavior could lead health care
providers to overestimate adherence by solely using pharmacy refill records. In many settings, pharmacy refill records are already a part of national monitoring and evaluation frameworks and can also provide additional information on adherence to ART when used in combination with other tools.

**Self-report**

Asking people living with HIV or their caregivers how many doses of medication they have missed since the last visit (or within a specified number of days in the past) can help to estimate non-adherence. However, although this method is commonly used, people may not remember missed doses accurately or may not report missed doses because they want to be perceived as being adherent and to avoid criticism. Counselling on the importance of remembering and/or documenting ARV drug doses and an environment that promotes and enables honest reporting of non-adherence are critical components of monitoring adherence to ART in routine care settings.

**Pill counts**

Counting the remaining pills in bottles may help to assess adherence. Pill counts usually take place at routine health care visits. However, some people may throw away tablets prior to health care visits, leading to overestimated adherence. Although unannounced visits at people’s homes could lead to more accurate estimates, this approach poses financial, logistical and ethical challenges. Counting pills also requires health care personnel to invest significant time and may not be feasible in routine care settings. Pill count can perform better when combined with self-reported adherence.

5.6. Task shifting for HIV treatment and care

Reorganizing, integrating and decentralizing HIV treatment and care will require re-examining the roles and tasks of teams of health care providers involved in delivering chronic HIV care. Task shifting involves the rational redistribution of tasks among health workforce teams. With this approach, specific tasks are reassigned, where appropriate, from highly qualified health workers to health workers with shorter training and fewer complementary qualifications to more efficiently and effectively use the available human resources. Task shifting should be
implemented alongside other strategies designed to increase the total numbers and capacity of all types of health workers.

The quality of care in task shifting should be ensured by (a) providing training, mentoring, supervision and support for nurses, non-physician clinicians and community health workers; (b) stating clear indications for patient referral; (c) implementing referral systems and (d) implementing monitoring and evaluation systems.

Both initial and ongoing training and mentoring, supportive supervision and administrative planning have been critical to the success of programmes that have implemented task shifting. Programmes need to train and establish a system for routine supportive supervision of health workers, including lay providers.

### 5.7. Decentralizing HIV treatment and care

Although rapidly scaling up HIV programs has significantly improved access to ART and increased the health and survival of people living with HIV, it also poses significant challenges to health systems. Decentralizing ART to primary care settings will ease the burden of routine management on other parts of the health system and will improve equity by promoting access to ART in rural areas. Decentralizing HIV care and treatment could reduce the workload for health care personnel, thereby reducing waiting times for people with HIV and people receiving care at hospitals for other conditions and bring HIV services closer to people’s homes. Decentralization and scale up of HIV care and treatment services will continue based on need assessments to address community groups with high HIV prevalence.

### 5.8. Integrating and linking services

Chronic care requires integrating and linking related services to ensure comprehensive and consistent patient management over time, including providing related services in single settings, systems to share information and effective referrals across settings and providers.

Integrating and linking services are likely to reduce missed opportunities for initiating ART, enhance long-term adherence support and optimize patient retention in care. Programs for HIV, sexual and reproductive health, maternal and child health and TB need to collaborate to successfully implement ART and related services at different levels of the health system.
Delivering HIV services in antenatal care, maternal and child health settings
HIV testing should be offered to all pregnant women through provider-initiated approaches as an essential component of MNCH services. It is also recommended to provide couple and partner HIV testing for all pregnant women and their partners in maternal and child health care settings.

ART should be initiated and maintained in all pregnant and postpartum women and in infants at maternal and child health care settings, with linkage and referral to ongoing HIV care and ART, where appropriate.

Delivering HIV services in TB treatment settings
All tuberculosis patients should be offered HIV testing services in TB clinics. TB patients co-infected with HIV should be initiated with ART through linkage to HIV care and ART services. All PLHIV enrolled to HIV care need to be screened for TB and those with no sign and symptoms of active TB should be provided with INH prophylaxis. PLHIV who develop TB after the initiation of ART, should be linked to TB clinics for TB treatment.

STI and family planning services in HIV care settings
Sexually transmitted infections (STIs) and family planning services can be integrated within HIV care settings. WHO recommends routine offer of HIV testing services for persons with an STI in all epidemic settings and for family planning clients in generalized epidemic settings. Likewise, all PLHIV should be screened for STIs and treated as per the National Guidelines for Syndromic Management of STIs.
Family planning services should be provided in HIV care/ART clinics to avoid unintended pregnancy among women living with HIV.

5.9. Delivering HIV services to adolescents
There is a growing cohort of adolescents living with HIV, which includes those infected from birth and those who have acquired HIV later in childhood and adolescence. While there is still a lack of health outcome data for this age group, emerging evidence indicates that adolescents living with HIV are underserved by current HIV services and have significantly worse access to
and coverage of ART. Adolescents are at high risk of loss to follow-up both before and after ART initiation; people aged 15–24 years and those attending services for the PMTCT of HIV are particularly at risk.

All adolescents, including those living with HIV, face significant barriers to accessing health services, due to inadequate health literacy, limited ability to navigate health systems, legal requirements for parental or caregiver consent, and insufficient resources to pay direct and associated service costs. Adolescents face significant levels of stigma and discrimination.

Poor quality of services also limits adolescent engagement in health care. Adolescents often perceive health services as unacceptable due to concerns about confidentiality and negative health provider attitudes. Services are often not organized to accommodate adolescent needs and routines and have inconvenient service schedules, inflexible appointments and unwelcoming environments. Without sufficient consideration and support, adolescents can be lost between paediatric and adult services. The rapid developmental and social changes that occur during adolescence exacerbate the impact of such barriers and can have a profound impact on the way adolescents engage with health services.

Due to their unique needs, adolescents living with HIV require quality comprehensive services and care to support access, retention and adherence. This includes psychosocial support, SRH and mental health care. According to WHO’s Quality of care framework, adolescent friendly health service is defined as follows:

- **Equitable**: all adolescents, not just certain groups, are able to obtain the health services they need.
- **Accessible**: adolescents are able to obtain the services that are provided.
- **Acceptable**: health services are provided in ways that meet the expectations of adolescent clients.
- **Appropriate**: the right health services that adolescents need are provided.
- **Effective**: the right health services are provided in the right way and make a positive contribution to the health of adolescents.
Adolescent-friendly HIV prevention, care and treatment service implementation considerations include:

- Aligning approaches for HIV service delivery with national adolescent-friendly health service standards, protocols and activities;
- Including implementation of adolescent-friendly approaches in HIV health service supervisory and monitoring systems;
- Ensuring training, research and personal development opportunities for health service providers on adolescent HIV treatment and care;
- Engaging service providers, adolescents and other key stakeholders to identify acceptable and feasible activities;
- Implementing adolescent-friendly health service approaches in all HIV services used by adolescents, including antenatal care for pregnant adolescents living with HIV;
- Establishing linkages and referral pathways to ensure a comprehensive continuum of care, especially for the transition from paediatric to adult HIV services.

5.10. Improving the quality of HIV care services

HIV programmes should be innovative in addressing local challenges and aim to strengthen programme monitoring and the routine use of programme data to improve the quality of services. Quality of care emphasizes that services should be effective in achieving desired health outcomes and that health-care practices should be people-centred and safe. Strategies to improve the quality of HIV care services are needed both at the programme management level and at health facility and community levels where HIV care services are provided. If an intervention is to achieve the desired health outcomes, it needs to be evidence based, of high quality and achieve a level of coverage that brings desired outcomes at the population level.

Quality care means that people living with HIV receive the care they require to maintain their health and quality of life. For HIV programmes and health-care providers, quality HIV care optimizes programme effectiveness and efficiency. For policy-makers and funding agencies, quality care is an important requirement for maintaining health at the population level and ensuring the optimal use of available resources.
Quality of care should not be seen as an additional activity to routine HIV services or a short-term project to address implementation issues and gaps; it should be incorporated into daily activities at all levels, from service delivery to national programme management.

5.11. Pharmaceuticals supply management system

The overarching objective of pharmaceuticals supply management system is to support national policy with the adequate and continuous availability of the most safe, effective, quality-assured ARV pharmaceuticals at service delivery sites, in the right quantity, at the lowest possible cost and in a timely manner.

Pharmaceutical Fund and Supply Agency (PFSA) is responsible for quantification, procurement, storage and distribution of pharmaceuticals to health facilities. Health facilities obtain essential and vital pharmaceuticals primarily through the Integrated Pharmaceutical Logistics System (IPLS), a single reporting and distribution system managed by PFSA. Pharmaceuticals used for HIV program are also managed through IPLS.

The new recommendation that ART should be initiated in all people living with HIV regardless of CD4 cell count will require an integrated national strategic response that considers the resources available and enables strong PSM systems at all levels of the health system. FMOH, PFSA and other stakeholders need to work together to ensure that the national supply system is functioning well in accordance with the increasing national demand and the 90-90-90 target.

1. Selection of ARV Drugs and Related Supplies:

Product selection is informed by national policies and ART guidelines. Products are selected from or become part of a National Essential Medicines List (EML) and are based on standard treatment guidelines (STGs). If a selected ARV drug is not on EML and/or registered in the country, HIV programme managers should coordinate with Food, Medicine and Health Care Administration and Control Authority of Ethiopia (FMHACA) and request that these drugs be put on the list and registered.
2. **Quantification:**
National quantification of ARV pharmaceuticals need is conducted by PFSA in collaboration with FMOH, FHAPCO, other stakeholders and development partners. Normally, the national quantification is done every three years. However, due to various changes in the program regarding regimen proportions, dynamic ARV preparations, and changes in guidelines, it is found necessary to conduct the national level quantification review exercise every year to update the previous quantification exercise assumptions and results so that the forecast meets the current demands of the program. Based on the forecast produced, supply plan will be prepared allowing sufficient flexibility to adjust for potential changes in the pace of scale-up, regimen switching and/or other unforeseen events affecting consumption.

3. **Procurement:**
All ARV pharmaceuticals for use in the public and private sector should be procured at affordable prices, with assured quality and adequate shelf life, from a reliable supplier. ARVs and related commodities are procured and distributed by PFSA. The procurement process follows the national and international procurement regulation, which is a competitive approach through international bidding. Technical evaluation of bidders takes place to select the suppliers and awards the contracts. Purchase orders are given to awarded bidders to deliver the products in a staggered approach so as to avoid expiry and reduce expenses of storage.

4. **Storage and Distribution:**
Proper storage of ARVs, including refrigeration, is critical to maintain the quality of the drugs and related supplies. Since the recommendation to offer ART to people with HIV regardless of CD4 cell count will significantly increase commodity volumes and the demands on storage and distribution, adequate space and equipments for proper handling must be ensured at various levels.

Pharmaceuticals and health products distribution will follow the existing delivery system and it extends from the central level to health facilities. Central PFSA will have a major role of delivering the products to its Hubs; subsequently the hubs distribute the commodities to health facilities based on orders placed by health facilities to PFSA hubs every two months.
5. **Inventory Control:**

Inventory control system is mandatory to maintain an appropriate stock level of products at all levels of the supply chain to avoid shortage and overstock. IPLS dictates the implementation of max-min inventory control system where there is a set of maximum and minimum months of stock to be kept at each level starting from PFSA central up to health facilities. Health Commodity Management Information System (HCMIS) is an electronic inventory control system which is currently utilized at PFSA central, hubs and some health facilities whereas the remaining health facilities are utilizing a paper based system.

**NB.** PFSA is responsible for collecting, validating, analyzing, and utilizing product information to ensure an uninterrupted supply of health products.

6. **Rational medicine use:**

Rational medicine use (RMU) dictates that patients must receive medicines appropriate for their clinical needs, in doses that meet their individual requirements, for an adequate period of time and at the lowest cost to them. RMU implies promotion of rational prescribing, ensuring good
dispensing practice and encouraging appropriate medicine use by the patient and the community at large. FMOH in collaboration with FMHACA, PFSA and other stakeholders should implement a strategy to ensure RMU as it is a part and parcel of programmatic activities at each and every level.

7. **Quality Assurance:**
Mechanisms must be put in place to assure the quality of drugs entering the country through pre-procurement certification and post-marketing surveillance. Appropriate quality assurance mechanisms for pharmaceuticals is developed and implemented by FMHACA. Quality standards should also define storage conditions at PFSA warehouses and health facility stores. The national laboratory must have the capacity to assure the quality of ARV pharmaceuticals. Quality assurance of drugs and supplies will be maintained using simple visual inspection methods and a First-Expiry-First-Out (FEFO) system to avoid expiration and ensure fresh supplies are available at all levels.

---

5.12. **Laboratory and diagnostic services**
The consolidated national HIV guidelines support an increased access to HIV care and treatment, which will also require increased access to laboratory and diagnostic services. To ensure that laboratory services are accurate and reliable, relevant quality assurance systems need to be developed and strengthened. There are multiplicity of diagnostic settings, such as laboratories, maternal and child health clinics, HIV testing and counselling sites and community-based testing. Strategic planning for proper placement and harmonization of testing platforms should be carried out to ensure appropriate use and cost-effectiveness.

This guidance to strengthen laboratory and diagnostic services emphasizes the importance of leadership and governance, high-quality laboratory services, expanding testing services and developing the health workforce:

- to strengthen and expand laboratory and diagnostic services;
- to support a dedicated specimen referral system;
- to increase access to HIV viral load testing;
- to support the expansion of diagnostic services to include testing at the point of care;
to train and certify health workers who perform the testing; and
- to ensure high-quality diagnostics and plans for implementation, including quality assurance.
- To ensure appropriate deployment of diagnostic technologies to increase their efficient and optimal use

1. Strengthening and expanding laboratory and diagnostic services

The following areas are important to strengthen the network of laboratory and diagnostic services for implementing the national guidelines:
- expanding and strengthening current laboratory networks with efficient sample referral mechanisms to support and monitor the decentralization and integration of laboratory services or to provide access to laboratory tests which are available at limited number of sites (e.g. HIV viral load testing, DNA PCR, CD4 count etc.)
- standardizing testing methods to streamline procurement, quality assurance and training;
- incorporating new testing approaches and systems into national laboratory strategic plans and policies;
- evaluating diagnostics for their performance and operational characteristics to validate testing algorithms (with back-up options) before introduction;
- carrying out strategic planning for properly placing and harmonizing testing platforms to ensure appropriate use and cost–effectiveness;
- Allocating appropriate resources to ensure the availability of testing services, including human and financial resources.

2. Supporting a dedicated specimen referral system

Laboratory referral systems and procedures for collecting and processing specimens need to be strengthened to increase access to viral load testing and other testing (for example, CD4 and early infant diagnosis). Providing for and strengthening a dedicated, efficient, safe and cost-effective specimen referral system requires reliable specimen transport with adequate conditions for whole blood, plasma and dried blood spot specimens and rapidly and dependably reporting test results
back to the referring site with linkage to care. Rapidly reporting results is essential for timely care.

3. Increasing access to HIV viral load testing
The guidelines recommend the use of viral load testing to monitor treatment response and diagnose treatment failure and the use of dried blood spot samples for viral load testing. This will require strengthening the existing laboratory services and phased expansion of monitoring services into peripheral facilities and can include:

- strengthening and leveraging existing sample transport and result receiving networks;
- ensuring that laboratories have adequate infrastructure, technical testing expertise and quality assurance and quality improvement programmes;
- ensuring an appropriate mix of high-volume centralized laboratory testing and testing at the point of care for facilities in remote locations; and
- The use of dried blood spots as a tool to increase access to viral load testing.

4. Planning for appropriate use of CD4 count testing as access to viral load testing increases
As the country eliminated CD4 count-dependent treatment initiation thresholds and viral load monitoring replaces monitoring with CD4 cell count, it is anticipated that the demand for CD4 count testing will decrease. As this transition takes place, programme, laboratory and procurement and supply management staff should take into account the following programmatic considerations.

- As demand decreases, reductions in CD4 count testing capacity can be staged through several strategies based on site-level demand.
- Although sample referral networks for CD4 cell count and viral load testing may overlap, the sample types require different transport capabilities. The programme needs to ensure adequate network capability for sample referral for viral load testing prior to scaling down CD4 count testing.
• Programme planning should include a realistic transition of financial support from CD4 count testing to viral load monitoring. Quantification and forecasting (active supply planning) will be essential to account for commodity shifts. This is particularly important in the early phases of the transition when historical data will not reflect current commodity needs. Supply chain needs, including cold-chain transport and storage, must also be considered during the transition.

Even in settings with full access to viral load testing, CD4 cell count testing capability will continue to be needed as part of HIV programs for baseline risk and other clinical assessments. (Refer section xx)

5. Expanding diagnostic services to point-of-care settings

Decentralizing laboratory and diagnostic services requires that all aspects of testing be in place before implementing services, including:

• using only high-quality, evaluated and reliable diagnostic tests;
• supervising and monitoring point-of-care testing for quality and reliability;
• implementing a strategy for managing supply chain and equipment service; and
• Establishing data management systems for timely identification of quality issues and regional and national data reporting.

6. Implementing comprehensive quality management systems

Developing a comprehensive quality management system including external quality assessment (EQA) and quality control is essential. The quality management system should:

• be implemented within the laboratory network and all remote testing sites;
• be incorporated into the routine testing procedures and monitored;
• ensure that testing sites undertake quality control, as appropriate;
• ensure that testing sites are enrolled in an external quality assessment scheme (proficiency testing program);
• ensure the use of standard operating procedures for all processes, including specimen collection and processing, test methods, interpreting results and reporting;
• ensure the use of standardized logbooks or electronic data management and reporting, including identifying errors and potential misclassification; and
• ensure that equipment and facilities are maintained, both preventive and corrective.

7. Providing guidance for developing health workers’ capacity, including staff training and certification

There should be guidelines for the qualification of personnel who will perform the laboratory tests. The guidelines should include training requirements for specific tests and the process for certification and re-certification. All health workers assigned to perform point-of-care testing must be trained and proficient on the testing procedure, specimen collection and quality assurance before implementing these services.
CHAPTER SIX: GUIDANCE FOR PROGRAMME MANAGERS

Policy development and review is a dynamic process. Policies change according to the lessons learnt during the implementation of the program as well as evidence and knowledge change over time at national, regional and global level. Policies set early in the development of a program may negatively affect implementation and need to be revised. Policies, therefore, need to be able to respond to these changes. Program managers should be cognizant of changes and challenges affecting the development and implementation of HIV/AIDS policies. These include political commitment, financial implications, administrative reforms, community participation (PLHIV input) and basic legislation.

The key benefits to the global and country HIV response have been that policies have enabled governments, communities, organizations and individuals to break the silence on issues previously deemed taboo. These include matters related to sexual behavior, injecting drug use, socio-cultural attitudes towards diseases, stigma associated with gender, poverty, ethnicity and religious beliefs, entitlement to services and human rights that are discussed in an open manner.

6.1 Guiding principles

The following guiding principles are expected to lead the implementation of the national HIV program and services provision:

i. An effective response to HIV/AIDS requires ownership and active involvement of the community and all other sectors

ii. Strong leadership commitment at all levels is essential for sustainable and effective response to the HIV/AIDS epidemic

iii. Establishment of partnership by the government to enhance enabling environment (for the strengthening of the partnership through nurturing local and international initiatives and relationships)
iv. A multi-sectoral approach that includes partnership, consultations and coordination with all stakeholders in the design, implementation, review, monitoring and evaluation of the national response to HIV/AIDS.

v. Gender sensitivity must be considered as a cornerstone to guarantee the success of HIV/AIDS response with greater and sustained positive impact;

vi. Public health approaches in HIV prevention, treatment, care and support services through innovative, evidence based, cost effective and high impact interventions.

vii. Promotion and Protection of Human Rights shall be based on the principles of fundamental human rights, social justice and equity guaranteed by the constitution of the country, including avoidance of stigma and discrimination and addressing criminalization of HIV-related behaviors;

viii. As key stakeholders in the fight against HIV/AIDS, Greater Involvement of People living with HIV (PLHIV), at all levels and areas of the intervention is crucial for an effective response;

ix. Best Use of Resources: efficiency, transparency and accountability in and for proper allocation and effective utilization of resources are essential in the national response to HIV/AIDS epidemic at all levels;

x. The HIV/AIDS programs are designed and implemented in order to ensure equitable and universal access;

xi. Ensuring Sustainability is a cross-cutting and impassable agenda to be put on the forefront of the HIV prevention, treatment, care and support programs design and their implementation;

xii. Ensuring that HIV/AIDS program activities are integrated (testing and counseling; access to ART; access to PMTCT services; access to condoms; availability of STI services for youth and most at risk populations; HIV/AIDS and the workplace (employment); blood safety; etc.) and are linked to other pre-existing services.

Ethiopia has developed its national strategic plan for the period 2015-2020. The 2015-2020 Ethiopia HIV/AIDS prevention care and treatment Strategic plan was developed in an investment case approach. This investment cases aims to pave the path for ending AIDS by 2030 through averting 70,000 – 80,000 new HIV infections and saving about half a million lives till 2020. The targets set in this investment case are in line with the three 90’s (90-90-90) treatment targets set by UNAIDS to help end the AIDS epidemic. The three 90’s include:

- By 2020, 90% of all people living with HIV will have been diagnosed.
By 2020, 90% of all people with diagnosed HIV infection will receive antiretroviral therapy.

By 2020, 90% of all people on antiretroviral therapy will have suppressed viral load.

The HIV Investment case includes four strategic objectives to achieve the goals and targets. These are:

2. Implement high impact and targeted prevention program.
3. Intensify Targeted HIV testing and counseling services.
4. Attain virtual elimination of MTCT.
5. Optimize and sustain quality care and treatment

In addition, four critical enablers are identified as necessary for the HIV Investment Case to deliver the results. These include:

A. Critical enabler 1: Health system strengthening: HMIS/M&E, PHPM & Laboratory services
B. Critical enabler 2: Enhance Partnership, Coordination and Leadership
C. Critical enabler 3: Increase Domestic resources for HIV response
D. Critical enabler 4: Gender equality and equity: Address gender related barriers to HIV and SRH needs of girls and boys, and women and men.

Most HIV/AIDS programs will have HIV strategic Information officers who will be responsible for the technical aspects. For a manager, it is important to note that the key end-product of a functional HIV strategic information system is the availability of adequate and quality data which can be used for policy, program management and clinical care. To achieve this, a manager should ensure that:

i. The key components of HIV strategic information systems including its coordination structures and resources are in place.

ii. HIV data and information are adequately used at all levels to guide decision making processes, priority setting, choice of interventions and future directions as well as understanding the status of the HIV epidemic and response in the context of ‘Know Your Epidemic’ and ‘Know Your Response’.
iii. Clear policies for data collection, storage, retrieval, sharing and confidentiality are articulated and are in line with national health information policies and acts.

iv. Resources are available for strengthening HIV strategic information.

In addition, national HIV program managers play a unique role in establishing systems that are required to ensure broad accountability for implementation from all partners at all levels and adequately document performance to inform programming decisions and maintain political support. Implementation and operations research should be supported so that innovative approaches can be assessed and taken to scale. Human rights and ethical principles should guide the revision of national treatment policies to ensure that they are equitable and meet the specific needs of all beneficiaries.

As HIV programs mature and increasingly focus on the challenges of long-term prevention, treatment, care and support, national responses need to be considered within the broader health and development contexts. The sustainability and effectiveness of HIV programs can be greatly enhanced by creating and strengthening linkages with other health and non-health programs.

6.2. National and local HIV epidemiology

An epidemiological analysis should describe the prevalence levels among the general population and in specific key populations, the rate at which HIV infection is acquired and among whom, including infants, young children, pregnant women and sero discordant couples. Both prevalence and incidence measurements should aim to identify populations at higher risk for HIV infection, including in generalized epidemic settings, and adequate population size estimates for these populations should be available so that results can be interpreted appropriately. Data on the prevalence and incidence of key co-infections (such as TB and hepatitis B and C) and other co-morbidities should also be gathered to inform decision-making.

6.3. Program performance and response analysis

Determining whether current ARV programs are adequate to address the needs that have been identified requires understanding who is currently accessing these services. Programs should assess present ARV coverage levels among the general population as well as key populations, the disease stage at which they access care, how well these groups are retained in care and treatment, the ARV regimens used and the impact of ART on viral load suppression, morbidity and
mortality. Disaggregated data for various groups enable assessment of ARV needs and establishment of priorities for delivering services.

Data on adherence, retention and viral load suppression are key to assess the quality of the services provided. Surveillance of transmitted and acquired HIV drug resistance can also be instrumental in informing decisions on optimal regimen choices.

Whenever possible, indicators of impact, such as changes in HIV-related incidence, prevalence, morbidity and mortality, should also be reviewed.

**Socioeconomic, policy and legal context**

A review of epidemiological and programmatic data is incomplete without a deeper understanding of what drives HIV vulnerability and how various political, social, economic and legal factors affect the ability and willingness of various groups – such as men, women, adolescents, sex workers, and people who inject drugs – to seek and access health services. Stigma, discrimination, poverty, gender inequality, education and migration status are key elements that should be taken into account to inform effective HIV programming.

### 6.4. Key parameters for decision-making

1. **Ethics, equity and human rights**

Multiple legal, social and normative obstacles have resulted in inequitable access to HIV treatment and care. Global and national commitments require providing HIV treatment and prevention to everyone in need, following the human rights principles of non-discrimination, accountability and participation. National HIV strategies should be planned and implemented from the outset with the ultimate goal of delivering the full package of services and interventions recommended in these guidelines as soon as possible.

Key ethical principles of fairness, equity and urgency should also be observed in the process of reviewing and adapting guidelines. The design of effective and equitable policies implies that strategies should focus comprehensively on addressing barriers to access testing, prevention and treatment services, particularly those faced by key populations.

2. **Impact and cost–effectiveness**

Realizing positive impact for a population is an important goal of public health programs and policies. Examples of the impact of HIV programs include reduced HIV incidence, prevalence, morbidity and mortality and improved quality of life. Impact is often a result of a complex set of
factors and a combination of diverse inputs and activities or processes, and it is often not attributable to a single intervention or program.

Cost–effectiveness analysis is one of several economic evaluation tools used to measure the value of delivering particular services. Economic evaluation measures the costs and consequences of alternative programs, which are then compared to assess how the greatest health benefits can be generated. In cost–effectiveness analysis, impact is often measured using indicators related to a change in health status, such as disability-adjusted life-years (DALYs) gained, which includes the estimated number of deaths and infections averted. As the experience of scaling up ART in low- and middle-income countries demonstrates, the cost–effectiveness of health interventions also changes over time, as costs fall because of gains in scale, improvements in technology or the design of more efficient delivery systems.

During the development of these guidelines, a consortium of research groups independently developed and then compared mathematical models to assess the epidemiological and clinical impact as well as cost–effectiveness ratios of various interventions, notably those related to earlier initiation of ART.

Although evaluating cost–effectiveness and health impact may be useful in systematically comparing various program interventions, they should be considered in the light of the ethical, equity and human rights implications associated with different courses of action, especially in settings in which not all eligible individuals currently have access to ART.

Investments in critical enabler programs (such as integrated treatment and rights literacy programs, legal services, stigma and discrimination reduction programs, training for health care workers and law enforcement) can play a role in overcoming barriers to accessing treatment and other HIV-related services and keeping people connected to care. As such, these programs can contribute to overall cost–effectiveness, in addition to achieving other important objectives, such as reducing discrimination.

**Opportunities and risks**

The recommendations in these guidelines have the potential to further reduce HIV-related mortality, improve the quality of life, reduce the number of people acquiring HIV infection and enhance treatment effectiveness. The benefits accrued from implementing them are likely to considerably outweigh the upfront investment needed and have the potential to fundamentally change the course of the epidemic. Nevertheless, domestic factors (such as budget cuts, theft of ARV drugs, and attrition of trained health workers and emergence of drug resistance) and
external contingencies (such as withdrawal of external financial support, political instability and natural disasters) could negatively affect their implementation. It is essential to design strategies to mitigate such events so that continued service delivery can be assured, especially for those most in need.

**Implementations**

In concentrated epidemic settings with low ART coverage, it is critical to identify opportunities to expand access to HIV treatment and care, including testing and counseling, to most-at-risk populations, such as men who have sex with men, transgender people, sex workers, people who inject drugs and prisoners. This requires addressing any structural barriers that may prevent these populations from seeking and accessing care. Integrating HIV services into drug dependence treatment and harm reduction services and TB clinics can be a highly effective approach to reaching these populations. In these settings, given the relatively limited number of pregnant women living with HIV, phasing out option A for PMTCT and providing ART during pregnancy and breastfeeding to reduce the risk of mother-to-child transmission of HIV (option B) are highly effective and relatively low-cost strategies.

Identifying individuals with CD4 counts between 350 and 500 cells/mm³ provides an important opportunity to link them into care and initiate ART early. Other strategies to improve the overall levels of access to and uptake of ART include decentralizing HIV services to the primary health care level and integrating HIV services with TB and antenatal care and maternal and child health services, and offering pregnant and breastfeeding women living with HIV the option of receiving lifelong ART, based on national program decisions. In addition, as in concentrated epidemics, it is important to identify and reach key populations and those with poor access to clinical and community-based services. These may include sex workers, people who inject drugs, men who have sex with men, transgender people or other groups such as adolescent girls, migrants and other mobile populations, older women and certain high-risk occupational groups.

As coverage of ART increases and programs mature, expanding access to second-line regimens increasingly becomes a programmatic priority. Access to third line regimens for PLHIV who fail on second line regimens should be sought. Scaling up viral load monitoring will be important to adequately identify treatment failure and to avoid switching unnecessarily to second-line regimens. Viral load monitoring is also likely to play a central monitoring role in places in which ART is being broadly expanded to reduce HIV incidence.
As people initiate treatment earlier and stay on it for longer, monitoring the quality of service delivery and strengthening service linkages to improve retention throughout the cascade of care are essential to optimize treatment outcomes and long-term program performance.

### 6.5. Roles and responsibility

As the response to HIV involves a wide diversity of actors, coordination at various levels of the system becomes important to ensure coherence and cohesion of efforts. HIV programme managers should ensure effective coordination (a) with other health programmes, (b) between the HIV activities in the health sector and those in other sectors, and (c) for the implementation of the HIV activities in the health sector, between the different levels of the health system (National, regional and district).

**Ministry of Health**

Some of the functions of the Ministry of Health are to provide policy guidance, regulation, ensuring accountability for health, health intelligence and building partnership across all health actors. The Ministry of Health should also ensure that public health services are of quality and are equitable. The Ministry of Health must play these critical roles in the health sector response to HIV, also, and in particular, when it is not a major provider of health services. The AIDS Programme of the Ministry of Health should provide technical leadership and coordination of the health sector response to HIV. The AIDS Programme Manager should serve as a leader, manager, facilitator and innovator and should liaise regularly with other health programmes and other health and HIV actors.

**Decentralization levels**

For effective implementation and follow up, national strategic plans must be linked and cascaded to the regional Zonal/Woreda level. RHB and zonal/Woreda Health Offices are mandated to manage and coordinate the operation of primary health care services at the respective levels. They are responsible for planning, financing, monitoring and evaluating of all HIV/AIDS programs and service deliveries in the region and zonal/Woreda.

**Partners**

The roles and responsibilities of local and international partners include:

- Technical and financial support for implementation of the newly adopted interventions
• Participate in the national and regional HIV program coordination mechanisms
• Support the joint planning, monitoring and evaluation of the different program areas

6.6. Coordination mechanisms

HIV/AIDS control and prevention office (HAPCO)
This is the primary mechanism for multi-sectoral coordination. It ideally includes representation from key actors in the national response to HIV including various government ministries, regional president’s nongovernmental organizations, and people living with HIV, faith-based organizations, and private sector and development partners.

Coordination in the Health Sector
High level coordination mechanisms such as the Health Sector Joint Steering Committee, which involves the heads of the Regional Health Bureaus, oversee the different programs in the health sector. The committee is chaired by senior officials in the Ministry of Health and provides general guidance to the health sector. Technical level coordination between health programs might occur through technical advisory/working groups.

Donor Coordination Mechanisms
Some funding agencies, such as the Global Fund to fight AIDS, TB and Malaria, The President’s Emergency Plan for AIDS Relief (PEPFAR) and other donors might have own types of mechanisms for coordinating their in-country efforts however, the health sector is involved and often a key member of these coordinating mechanisms and should always work to ensure consistency and harmonization.

Stewardship and advocacy for the AIDS response in other sectors:
The health sector is often in a position to provide the evidence necessary to leverage action for HIV in other sectors. The Ministry of Health has a crucial role in using its stewardship and advocacy power to ensure that HIV issues are addressed in all policies. This includes engaging ministries of education, social development, gender, transport etc.
In order to establish a functional National M&E system five key elements are important.

1. **Presence of an M&E unit**: Established M&E unit with qualified staff and enough budget. The Unit also needs to build links with regions, sector ministries, research institutions, NGOs, FBOs, civil associations and donors.

2. **Clear goals and objectives of the program**: It needs well-defined national program goals, objectives and targets where regular reviews/evaluations of the progress of the implementation of the National/Regional program is undertaken. Guidelines and guidance need to be put in place on the M&E to regions and sectors.

3. **A core set of indicators and targets**: It is important to identify priority/core indicators and additional indicators that cover program inputs, activities/processes, outputs, outcomes and impact. Also, selection of indicators needs to be through full participation of stakeholders and maintaining relevance and comparability. The process needs also to utilize past and existing data collection efforts (e.g. DHS, BSS and Sentinel Surveillance) to assess national trends.

4. **A plan for data collection and analysis**: An overall national level data collection and analysis plan is important. The plan also has to address data collection and analysis systems at lower levels.

5. **A clear plan for data dissemination and use**: Establishment of an overall national level data dissemination plan is important.

**Monitoring & evaluation**

Effective HIV prevention, care and treatment require proper and standardized recording and reporting system. Recording and reporting is used to systematically monitor and evaluate progress of patient/s and treatment outcome as well as the overall program performance. Monitoring and evaluation is done at different levels of the health system where epidemiological and operational indicators for monitoring of the HIV prevention, care and treatment are compiled, calculated and analyzed, and used.

The reporting of HIV prevention, care and treatment activities is integrated into the Health Management Information System (HMIS) and all forms and registers are standardized in line with
HMIS throughout the country. Health facilities are the primary sources of data. Any information concerning PLHIV should completely and correctly be recorded. Registers and reporting forms should be kept neatly and maintained properly.

The expansion of HIV prevention care and treatment must be accompanied by effective M&E and operational research to guide implementation and to see that efficiency, effectiveness, quality of care and acceptability are established and maintained.

M&E will help programme and health facility managers assess the effectiveness of interventions and linkages between services along the cascade of testing, treatment and care for HIV and associated conditions. Such information is essential to detect and respond to bottlenecks or gaps in programme performance and to adequately characterize and respond to patient attrition. Patient monitoring systems are also important to support people receiving treatment over time and as they move between clinics and districts, to ensure retention in care. As programmes mature, monitoring is also essential of individual- and population-level outcomes, such as toxicity and adverse events, drug resistance, viral suppression, mortality, survival and incidence, to assess and optimize the impact of country programmes.

This national consolidated guide on monitoring and evaluation of HIV in the health sector that brings together the various elements of monitoring and evaluation systems for HIV programmes. The guide will consolidate and align existing monitoring and evaluation approaches in relevant programmatic areas (such as HIV testing and counselling, ART, PMTCT and HIV drug resistance)
### 7.1. Monitoring the implementation of the New recommendation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Summary of the new recommendation area</th>
<th>Implication for monitoring</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>HIV testing and Counseling</td>
<td>The monitoring tools should be reviewed to address the following new recommendations:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>• Repeat testing</td>
<td>• Services for adolescents, including systems for linkages to care</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Re-test for individuals with ongoing risk and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Re-test for verification before ART initiation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When to start ART</td>
<td>Monitor the number and percentage of different populations (such as adults, adolescents, children and pregnant and breastfeeding women) who have initiated ART based on the new eligibility criteria: Test-and-treat – ART should be initiated in all people living with HIV, regardless of WHO clinical stage or CD4 cell count.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Which ART regimen to start</td>
<td>Monitor the first-line, second-line and third line ART regimens people are receiving</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Monitoring tools may need to be adjusted to reflect new regimen options</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Response to ART and diagnosing treatment failure</td>
<td>Monitor the percentage of people receiving ART who had a viral load test and received the results</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Monitor the reasons for switching ART regimen</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## 7.2. Key Indicators

### HIV Program Indicators

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicator</th>
<th>Definition</th>
<th>Numerator/Denominator</th>
<th>Program relevance and interpretation</th>
<th>Source of data</th>
<th>New/Old</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **1. People living with HIV diagnosed (90)** | % of people living with HIV who have been diagnosed  
(Disaggregation: Sex, age (<1, 1-4, 5-9, 10-14, 15-19, 20-24, 25-49, 50+ years)), | N: Number of people living with HIV who have been diagnosed and received their results.  
D: Number of people living with HIV | Corresponds to the first 90 of the 90–90–90 target (90% of estimated PLHIV who have been tested for HIV) | Based on facility data:  
N: Cumulative number of reported new HIV diagnoses minus deaths;  
D: national PLHIV estimate | New |
2. **ART Coverage (90)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Key populations, other target populations.</th>
<th>based on internationally consistent modelled estimates, e.g. Spectrum Survey for key population/target population</th>
<th>Old but modified</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>% of people living with HIV who are receiving ART (disaggregation by age, sex, pregnant women, regimen) (Age: &lt;1, 1-4, 5-9, 10-14, 15-19, 20-24, 25-49,</td>
<td>N: Number of people living with HIV who are currently receiving ART</td>
<td>Corresponds to the second 90 of the 90-90-90 target (90% of those diagnosed with HIV who have started ART). It measures the extent to which</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>D: Number of people living with HIV who have been diagnosed and received their results</td>
<td>N: Program records, e.g. ART register and reporting forms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>D: Based on reports of HIV testing or HTS register</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### 3. Viral Suppression (90)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>% of people living with HIV and on ART who are virologically suppressed (disaggregation by age, sex, pregnant women, regimen) (Age: &lt;1, 1–4, 5–9, 10–14, 15–19, 20–24, 25–49, 50+ years)</th>
<th>N=Number of people living with HIV and on ART who have a suppressed viral load (&lt;1000 copies/mL).</th>
<th>ART needs are met.</th>
<th>ART registers and cross-sectional report, patient records. Population-based survey, such as the Health-Impact Assessment surveys, that collects data on ART coverage and viral suppression.</th>
<th>Old but modified</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Corresponds to the third 90 of the 90–90–90 target (90% of those on ART have suppressed viral loads).
### 4. HIV Positivity

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>% of individuals tested for HIV who received their test results and are positive</strong>* (age and sex disaggregation, pregnant women....)</td>
<td><strong>N:</strong> Number of people who were tested HIV positive and received their test results</td>
<td>Measures trends in scale-up of HIV testing and counselling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>***This considers positivity before the retesting for verification (Age: &lt;1, 1-4, 5-9, 10-14, 15-19, 20-24, 25-49, 50+ years)</td>
<td><strong>D:</strong> Number of people who were tested for HIV and received their test results</td>
<td>HTS register</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 5. Retesting to verify diagnosis at ART initiation

<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>% of people initiated on ART who were re-tested to verify the diagnosis</strong></td>
<td><strong>N:</strong> Number of people with HIV who initiated on ART within the reporting period and had a retest to verify HIV diagnosis.</td>
<td>Quality measure to assess whether retesting to verify HIV diagnosis at the time of ART</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>D:</strong> Number of people living with HIV who initiated on ART within the reporting period and had a retest to verify HIV diagnosis.</td>
<td>HTS register/Retesting register</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Linkage to care</td>
<td>% of newly HIV diagnosed people linked to HIV care (Disaggregation by age: &lt;1, 1-4, 5-9, 10-14, 15-19, 20-24, 25-49, 50+ years), sex, pregnant women, breastfeeding women, key population</td>
<td>N: Number of people who were newly enrolled in HIV care and received clinical HIV care services (as proxies by receipt of at least one of the following during the reporting period: clinical assessment (WHO staging) OR CD4 count OR viral load count OR currently receiving ART.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. ART retention</td>
<td>% of people living with HIV and on ART who are alive and on ART 12 months</td>
<td>N: Number of people on ART who are alive and on ART 12 months</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| 8. **Number of PLHIV ever started on ART** | The cumulative number of people with HIV infection started on antiretroviral therapy (disaggregation by age, sex, regimen, pregnant women) (Age: <1, 1-4, 5-9, 10-14, 15-19, 20-24, 25-49, 50+ years) | after initiation

\( D: \) Number of people initiating on ART up to 12 months before the beginning of the reporting year. This includes those who have died since starting therapy, those who have stopped therapy and those lost to follow-up as of month 12. |
of services and continuing retention of people living with HIV on ART* |
| 8. Number of PLHIV ever started on ART | N: Number of PLHIV ever started on ART
\( D: \) NA |
|  | To indicate the trend of ART provision |
|  | ART register | Old |
| 9. **PLHIV receiving co-trimoxazole prophylaxis** | % of PLHIV enrolled in HIV care and eligible for co-trimoxazole prophylaxis who are currently receiving prophylaxis (Disaggregated by age and sex). **
(Age: <1, 1-4, 5-9, 10-14, 15-19, 20-24, 25-49, 50+ years) | 
| **N:** Number of PLHIV currently receiving co-trimoxazole prophylaxis |
| **D:** Number of PLHIV eligible for co-trimoxazole prophylaxis at the time of the report. |
| Indicates CPT coverage (prevention of OIs) | 
| Pre-ART and ART registers | Old |

**STI Program Indicators**

187
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicator</th>
<th>Definition</th>
<th>Numerator/Denominator</th>
<th>Program relevance and interpretation</th>
<th>Source of data</th>
<th>New/Old</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. STI case load</td>
<td>Number of STI cases identified and managed based on syndromic approach in the reporting period (Disaggregated by age, sex and syndromes) (Age: &lt;1, 10–19, 20–24, 25–49, 50+ years)</td>
<td>N: Number of STI cases identified and managed based of syndromic approach in the reporting period. D. NA</td>
<td>Helps to understand the burden of STI cases and its distribution by age, sex and syndromes</td>
<td>HMIS OPD and IPD logbooks</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. STI cases HIV testing</td>
<td>% of STI cases tested for HIV and their result is</td>
<td>N: Number of STI cases tested for HIV and</td>
<td>Helps to know the access of STI cases</td>
<td>HMIS OPD and IPD logbooks</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**and positivity**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>their result is positive (Disaggregated by age, sex and syndromes)</th>
<th>positive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(Age: &lt;1, 10–19, 20–24, 25–49, 50+ years)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>D: Number of STI cases managed based on the syndromic approach and tested for HIV</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>IPD logbooks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**3. STI screening and burden for PLHIV in chronic care**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>% of people enrolled in HIV care who were screened and diagnosed to have STI during their last visit in the reporting period</th>
<th>N: Number of people enrolled in HIV care who were screened and diagnosed to have STI during their last visit in the reporting period</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>D: Number of individuals enrolled in HIV care and screened for STI during</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Helps to see the extent of screening and the burden of STI among PLHIVs enrolled into HIV care</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pre-ART/ART register</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
(disaggregated by age and sex). (Age: <1, 10–19, 20–24, 25–49, 50+ years)

their last visit in the reporting period

---

**HIV and Nutrition Program Indicators**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicator</th>
<th>Definition</th>
<th>Numerator/Denominator</th>
<th>Program relevance and interpretation</th>
<th>Source of data</th>
<th>New/Old</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>1. Screening for malnutrition</strong></td>
<td>% of PLHIV in chronic care who received NAC service (nutritional)</td>
<td>N: Number of PLHIV in chronic care who received NAC services D: Number of PLHIV</td>
<td>Indicates service integration and quality of service for PLHIV</td>
<td>Pre-ART/ART register, Nutrition care register</td>
<td>Old but modified</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**2. Nutrition care for malnourished PLHIV**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Assessment and counseling</th>
<th>Currently in care</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Disaggregation by age (&lt;1, 1-4, 5-9, 10-14, 15-19, 20-49, 50+ years) and sex</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| % of clinically undernourished PLHIV in chronic care that received therapeutic or supplementary food |
| Disaggregation by age (<1, 1-4, 5-9, 10-14, 15-19, 20-49, 50+ years) and sex |

| N: Number of clinically undernourished PLHIV in chronic care that received therapeutic or supplementary food |
| D: Number of clinically undernourished PLHIV in chronic care |

| Indicates service integration and nutritional support for PLHIV |

| Pre-ART/ART register, Nutrition care register |

| Old but modified |
**HIV and Family planning Integration Indicators**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indicator</th>
<th>Definition</th>
<th>Numerator/Denominator</th>
<th>Program relevance and interpretation</th>
<th>Source of data</th>
<th>New/Old</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| 1. **Usage of Modern Family planning among HIV infected women age 15 - 49 in chronic care** | % of HIV infected women age 15 to 49 currently in chronic care using a modern family planning methods  
Disaggregation by age (15 – 24, 25 – 49) | N: Number of HIV infected women age 15-49 currently in chronic care using a modern family planning methods  
D: Number of HIV infected women age 15-49 currently in chronic care | Indicates FP and HIV service integration, HIV prevention and ensure PMTCT | Pre-ART/ART register                                                                  |         |
7.3. **Data Reporting, Data Flow and Quality Assurance**

Routine HIV HMIS data are assembled and reported on a quarterly and annual basis. Facilities aggregate and review their data monthly and report to their respective facility and administrative office quarterly. The administrative office aggregates the data it receives, adds its own administrative figures, and monitors its own performance based on these reports and self-generated data. It then forwards the HMIS report to the next level. Annual reports include additional data that are not collected quarterly. These reports follow the same line and principles of desegregation as the quarterly reports. Data aggregation methodology is maintained throughout the reporting chain so that it is possible to disaggregate data by facility type and ownership even at the federal level. HMIS Data flow from the facilities to the federal level is depicted below.

![HMIS data flow and feedback loop](image)

Figure 7.1. HMIS data flow and feedback loop

### 7.3.1. **Data Quality Assurance (DQA)**

Data Quality Check is one of the components of the M&E system. Once data are collected, the data are checked for any inaccuracies and obvious errors at every level. The data quality
assurance is done at two levels: facility level and administrative level (district health offices). At facility level, such a mechanism is the Lot Quality Assurance Sampling (LQAS) methodology which is done on monthly basis. In this procedure randomly selected data elements from the monthly reports are checked against the register or source of the report. The findings are then compared to a standard Data Accuracy Table. The same procedure is done at district health offices on quarterly basis before the data are sent to the next higher reporting unit. Hence, in HMIS all reports are quality checked at every level, from the healthcare institution to the federal level.

7.4. Supportive Supervision and Review Meetings

7.4.1. Supportive Supervision

Supervision aims at ensuring and improving quality, effectiveness and efficiency of services provided; it should also enhance competence and satisfaction of the staff at all levels. Supervision consists of observation, discussion, support and guidance. Since it is an essential tool in the management of staff and facilities, it should be done on a regular basis. The overall aim of supervision is the promotion of continuous improvement in the performance of the staff.

Supervisions at all levels are conducted in an integrated manner using standardized checklist clearly identified in the Integrated Supportive Supervision guideline. It is done from every administrative level to the respective office and health facility. The ISS guideline shows the actual process of implementation, team composition and checklist.

Besides ISSs, in-depth TB Program-Specific supervisions using standardized TBL and TB/HIV supportive supervision tool can also be conducted whenever critical gaps that require intensive technical approach are identified during the ISS.

7.4.2. Review Meetings

Review meetings organized at various levels create a very good opportunity to review the status of program implementation, achievements and challenges and come up with workable solutions for the problems and challenges encountered. They are key elements for program management. Furthermore, review meetings are forums for exchange of ideas and experiences among the health professionals and program coordinators. In these meetings, program coordinators from the next lower levels will present activity reports of their respective area, including major achievements and challenges or constraints encountered during the period under review.
Integrated review meeting is conducted on regular bases at every level. In this manner, activities taking place at all levels will then be brought forward to the respective review meeting sessions where TBL and TB/HIV program performance is reviewed as part of the overall review meeting.

### 7.5. Other monitoring considerations

Programs are increasingly moving beyond coverage indicators to focus on critical outcomes, such as viral load suppression and immune reconstitution, and on the broader impact of HIV treatment, including HIV-related mortality and HIV incidence. However, programs also need to measure potential unintended outcomes, such as HIV drug resistance and ARV-related toxicities. Periodic evaluations and implementation research are also central to reviewing programs.

**HIV drug resistance**

The use of early warning indicators to help identify deficits in program performance that favor the emergence of HIV drug resistance

**Evaluation, including impact and program performance, and implementation research**

Routine monitoring should be complemented by systematic evaluations and program reviews to assess the performance and effects of HIV programs, either comprehensively or with respect to specific priority areas. Social science and implementation research are important to assess perceptions and values of service recipients and communities along with barriers, facilitators and experiences in delivering and receiving services. Impact indicators, such as incidence, morbidity and mortality, are often difficult to measure.

Mathematical modeling is often undertaken to project various scenarios for program planning and evaluating impact. Ensuring the availability of robust data is especially important when estimating the prevention impact of ARV drugs at the population level, as multiple sources of information and uncertainty come into play. Specific data collection efforts and models for particular contexts may provide more accurate estimates.
Annexes

Annex 1: Growth Curves
Height-for-age GIRLS

5 to 19 years (z-scores)

2007 WHO Reference
Weight-for-age BOYS
5 to 10 years (z-scores)

2007 WHO Reference
Weight-for-age GIRLS
Birth to 5 years (z-scores)

WHO Child Growth Standards
### Annex 2: Dosage of antiretroviral drugs for adults and adolescents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Generic name</th>
<th>Dose</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nucleoside reverse-transcriptase inhibitors (NRTIs)</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abacavir (ABC)</td>
<td>300 mg twice daily or 600 mg once daily</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Didanosine (ddI)</td>
<td>400 mg once daily (&gt;60 kg) 250 mg once daily (≤60 kg)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Emtricitabine (FTC)</td>
<td>200 mg once daily</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lamivudine (3TC)</td>
<td>150 mg twice daily or 300 mg once daily</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stavudine (d4T)</td>
<td>30 mg twice daily</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zidovudine (AZT)</td>
<td>250–300 mg twice daily</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nucleotide reverse-transcriptase inhibitors (NtRTIs)</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tenofovir (TDF)</td>
<td>300 mg once daily</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Non-nucleoside reverse-transcriptase inhibitors (NNRTIs)</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Efavirenz (EFV)</td>
<td>600 mg once daily</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Etravirine (ETV)</td>
<td>200 mg twice daily</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nevirapine (NVP)</td>
<td>200 mg once daily for 14 days, followed by 200 mg twice daily</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Proteases inhibitors (PIs)</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Atazanavir + ritonavir (ATV/r)</td>
<td>300 mg + 100 mg once daily</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Darunavir + ritonavir (DRV/r)</td>
<td>800 mg + 100 mg once daily or 600 mg + 100 mg twice daily</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lopinavir/ritonavir (LPV/r)</td>
<td>400 mg/100 mg twice daily</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Considerations for individuals receiving TB therapy</em></td>
<td>In the presence of rifabutin, no dose adjustment required. In the presence of rifampicin, adjusted dose of LPV/r (LPV 800 mg + RTV 200 mg twice daily or LPV 400 mg + RTV 400 mg twice daily) or SQV/r (SQV 400 mg + RTV 400 mg twice daily), with close monitoring.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Integrase strand transfer inhibitors (INSTIs)</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Raltegravir (RAL)</td>
<td>400 mg twice daily</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*For adolescents weighing less than 35 kg, see the next page for weight-based dosing for ARV formulations for children.
Annex 3: Dosage of antiretroviral drugs in children

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Drug</th>
<th>Strength of tablet or sprinkle sachet or capsule (mg)</th>
<th>No. of tablets or sprinkle capsules/sachets by weight band</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>3–5.9kg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>AM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ABC/3TC/NVP</td>
<td>60mg/30mg/50mg</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LPV/r sprinkles</td>
<td>40mg/10 mg</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ABC/3TC/ LPV/r</td>
<td>30mg/15mg/10mg</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AZT/3TC/ LPV/r</td>
<td>30mg/15mg/10mg</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DRV/r</td>
<td>240/40mg</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ATV/r</td>
<td>100/33mg</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ABC/3TC</td>
<td>120/60mg</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TDF/3TC</td>
<td>75mg/75mg</td>
<td>1.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TDF/3TC/ EFV</td>
<td>75mg/75mg/150mg</td>
<td>1.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TDF/3TC adult double scored</td>
<td>300mg/300mg</td>
<td>one third</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TDF/3TC/EFV adult double scored</td>
<td>300mg/600mg</td>
<td>one third</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^a\) 3 tablets for 25–29.9 kg and 2.5 tablets for 20–24.9 kg.

\(^b\) A double-scored tablet has two score lines on one side of the tablet and one score line on the other side, enabling it to be divided into thirds or halves as needed.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Drug</th>
<th>Strength of Paediatric Tab (mg)</th>
<th>Number of tablets or ml by weight band (AM + PM)</th>
<th>Strength of Adult Tab (mg)</th>
<th>Number of tablets by Weight band (AM + PM)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Children 6 weeks of age and above</td>
<td>3-5.9 Kg AM</td>
<td>6-9.9 Kg AM</td>
<td>10-13.9 Kg AM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d4T/3TC</td>
<td>6/30</td>
<td>1 + 1</td>
<td>2 + 1</td>
<td>2 + 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>12/60</td>
<td>0.5 + 0.5</td>
<td>1 + 0.5</td>
<td>1 + 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d4T/3TC/NVP</td>
<td>6/30/50</td>
<td>1 + 1</td>
<td>2 + 1</td>
<td>2 + 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>12/60/100</td>
<td>0.5 + 0.5</td>
<td>1 + 0.5</td>
<td>1 + 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AZT/3TC</td>
<td>60/30</td>
<td>1 + 1</td>
<td>2 + 1</td>
<td>2 + 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>60/30/50</td>
<td>1 + 1</td>
<td>2 + 1</td>
<td>2 + 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EFZ</td>
<td>50, 200</td>
<td>n/r</td>
<td>n/r</td>
<td>200 once daily</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NVP</td>
<td>10 mg/ml</td>
<td>5ml + 5ml</td>
<td>8ml + 8ml</td>
<td>10ml + 10ml</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>200 (adult)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AZT</td>
<td>10 mg/ml</td>
<td>6ml + 6ml</td>
<td>9ml + 9ml</td>
<td>12ml + 12ml</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>300 (adult)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d4T</td>
<td>1 mg/ml</td>
<td>6 ml + 6ml</td>
<td>9ml + 9ml</td>
<td>15ml + 15ml</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3TC</td>
<td>10 mg/ml</td>
<td>3ml + 3ml</td>
<td>4ml + 4ml</td>
<td>5 ml + 5ml</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>150 (adult)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ABC</td>
<td>20 mg/ml</td>
<td>3ml +3ml</td>
<td>4ml + 4ml</td>
<td>6ml + 6ml</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>60</td>
<td>1 + 1</td>
<td>2 + 1</td>
<td>2 + 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>300 (adult)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ABC/3TC</td>
<td>60/30</td>
<td>1 + 1</td>
<td>2 + 1</td>
<td>2 + 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lop/r</td>
<td>80/20</td>
<td>1ml + 1ml</td>
<td>2ml + 1ml</td>
<td>2ml + 2ml</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>100/25</td>
<td>n/r</td>
<td>n/r</td>
<td>2 + 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>200/50</td>
<td>n/r</td>
<td>n/r</td>
<td>1 + 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ddI</td>
<td>25 chewable tablet:</td>
<td>2 x 25 +</td>
<td>2 x 25 +</td>
<td>125 EC once</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>125, 200, 250 EC</td>
<td>2 x 25</td>
<td>2 x 25</td>
<td>daily</td>
<td>daily</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: A 1:1 ratio of Lopinavir and Ritonavir is required when Lop/r is co-administered with enzyme-inducing drugs such as rifampicin; n/r = not recommended
### Annex 4: Pediatric ARV Drug Formulations, Side Effects and Special considerations in Children

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Drug / Formulation</th>
<th>Comments</th>
<th>Side Effects</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Nucleoside reverse transcriptase</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lamivudine (3TC)</td>
<td>Can be given with food. Store solution at room temperature (use within one month of opening). Tablet can be mixed with small amount of water and taken immediately. Side effects are rare.</td>
<td><strong>Common:</strong> head ache, nausea, abdominal pain. <strong>Less common:</strong> pancreatitis, neutropenia, increased LFTs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oral solution 10mg/ml</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tablet: 150mg</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stavudine (d4T)</td>
<td>Keep liquid refrigerated. Stable for 30 days. Capsules can be opened and mixed with small amount of food or water. <strong>DO NOT USE WITH AZT.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Common:</strong> head ache, and GI intolerance. <strong>Less common:</strong> peripheral neuropathy, lipoatrophy. <strong>Life threatening:</strong> lactic acidosis with severe hepatomegaly and steatosis.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oral solution 1mg/ml</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Capsules: 15mg, 20mg, 30mg, 40mg</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zidovudine (AZT or ZDV)</td>
<td>Can be given with food. Syrup is light sensitive, store in a glass jar. Capsule can be opened and contents dispersed or tablet crushed and combined with food or small amount of water. Large volume of syrup not well tolerated in older children. <strong>DO NOT USE WITH d4T.</strong></td>
<td><strong>Common:</strong> neutropenia, anemia, granulocytopenia, macrocytosis, and head ache. <strong>Less common:</strong> myositis, myopathy, mitochondrial disease.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oral solution 10mg/ml</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tablet: 300mg</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Capsule: 300mg</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Non-nucleoside reverse transcriptase</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Efavirenz (EFV)</td>
<td>Only for children ≥ 3 yrs. Syrup requires higher dose than capsules.</td>
<td><strong>Common:</strong> skin rash, somnolence, insomnia, abnormal dreams, confusion, hallucinations.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Syrup: 30mg/ml</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Capsule:</strong> 50mg, 100mg, 200mg</td>
<td>Can be given with food (but avoid high fat foods). Capsule can be opened and added to food: to avoid peppery taste mix with sweet food or jam Best given at night time to avoid CNS effects.</td>
<td><strong>Less common:</strong> increased LFTs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| **Nevirapine (NVP)**  
**Oral solution** 10mg/ml  
**Tablet:** 200mg | Store at room temperature. Can be given with food. Tablets can be divided and combined with small amount of water or food and immediately administered. Patients should be warned of rash. Do not escalate dose if rash occurs.  
**For SJS and TEN discontinue drug and do not rechallenge.**  
Multiple drug interactions. | **Common:** skin rash, head ache, nausea, diarrhea.  
**Less common:** increased LFTs.  
**Life threatening:** Steven Johnsons syndrome, TEN, fatal hepatitis. |
| **Nucleoside reverse transcriptase** | **Abacavir (ABC)**  
**Oral solution** 20mg/ml  
**Tablet:** 300mg | Can be given with food. Tablet can be mixed with small amount of water and taken immediately. Instruct patient on how to recognize and respond to potentially fatal hypersensitivity reaction. Patients should not interrupt therapy without consulting their healthcare provider.  
**DO NOT** rechallenge after hypersensitivity reaction. | **Common:** head ache, GI upset and rash.  
**Less common:** lactic acidosis, hepatomegaly with steatosis.  
**Life threatening:** potentially fatal hypersensitivity reaction (fatigue, rash, N/V, sore throat, joint and muscle pain, cough, and dyspnea). |
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Didanosine (ddI)</strong></th>
<th>If tablets are dispersed in water, at least 2 tablets of appropriate strength should be dissolved to ensure adequate buffer. Keep suspension refrigerated, shake well, stable for 30 days. Enteric formulation may be better tolerated.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Powder for oral solution:</strong> reconstituted 10ml/ml</td>
<td><strong>Common:</strong> diarrhea, abdominal pain, N/V. <strong>Less common:</strong> increased LFTs, lactic acidosis with hepatomegaly and steatosis, peripheral neuropathy, hyperuricemia. <strong>Life threatening:</strong> pancreatitis which is rare in children.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Chewable tablets:</strong> 25mg, 50mg, 100mg, 150mg</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Enteric coated capsules:</strong> 200mg, 250mg, 400mg</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Lamivudine (3TC)</strong></td>
<td>Can be given with food. Store solution at room temperature (use within one month of opening). Tablet can be mixed with small amount of water and taken immediately. Side effects are rare.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Oral solution 10mg/ml</strong></td>
<td><strong>Common:</strong> head ache, nausea, abdominal pain. <strong>Less common:</strong> pancreatitis, neutropenia, increased LFTs.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Tablet: 150mg</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Stavudine (d4T)</strong></td>
<td>Keep liquid refrigerated. Stable for 30 days. Capsules can be opened and mixed with small amount of food or water.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Oral solution 1mg/ml</strong></td>
<td><strong>Common:</strong> head ache, and GI intolerance. <strong>Less common:</strong> peripheral neuropathy, lipoatrophy. <strong>Life threatening:</strong> lactic acidosis with severe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>DO NOT USE WITH AZT.</strong></td>
<td><strong>hepatomegaly and steatosis.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zidovudine (AZT or ZDV)</td>
<td>Common: neutropenia, anemia, granulocytopenia, macrocytosis, and headache.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oral solution 10mg/ml</td>
<td>Less common: myositis, myopathy, mitochondrial disease.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tablet: 300mg</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Capsule: 300mg</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Can be given with food.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Syrup is light sensitive, store in a glass jar.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Capsule can be opened and contents dispersed or tablet crushed and combined with food or small amount of water.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Large volume of syrup not well tolerated in older children.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>DO NOT USE WITH d4T.</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Non-nucleoside reverse transcriptase

| **Efavirenz (EFV)** | Only for children ≥ 3 yrs. | Common: skin rash, somnolence, insomnia, abnormal dreams, confusion, hallucinations. |
| Siprup: 30mg/ml     | Syrup requires higher dose than capsules. | Less common: increased LFTs. |
| Capsule: 50mg, 100mg, 200mg | Can be given with food (but avoid high fat foods). |                             |
|                      | Capsule can be opened and added to food: to avoid peppery taste mix with sweet food or jam |                             |
|                      | Best given at night time to avoid CNS effects. |                             |

<p>| <strong>Nevirapine (NVP)</strong> | Store at room temperature. | Common: skin rash, head ache, nausea, diarrhea. |
| Oral solution 10mg/ml | Can be given with food. | Less common: increased LFTs. |
| Tablet: 200mg         | Tablets can be divided and combined with small amount of water or food and immediately administered. | Life threatening: Steven Johnsons syndrome, TEN, fatal hepatitis. |
|                       | Patients should be warned of rash. Do not escalate dose if rash occurs. |                             |
|                       | <strong>For SJS and TEN discontinue drug and do not rechallenge.</strong> |                             |
|                       | Multiple drug interactions. |                             |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Protease Inhibitors</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Lopinavir /ritonavir (LPV/r)</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oral solution 80mg/ml LPV plus 20mg/ml r capsules: 133.3mg LPV plus 33.3mg r</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Preferable to store capsules and liquid in a refrigerator. Can be stored at room temp 25°C for 2 months. Should be taken with food. Capsules should not be opened or crushed, swallow whole. Liquid has low volume but bitter taste. Tablets require no cold chain; can be used in children on full adult dose.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Common:</strong> diarrhea, headache, nausea, vomiting, increase in blood lipids</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Less common:</strong> pancreatitis, diabetes, hyperglycemia, hepatic toxicity, fat redistribution.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Nelfinavir (NFV)</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Powder for oral suspension (mix with liquid): 200 mg per level teaspoon (50mg per 1.25 ml scoop) Tablet: 250mg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Take with food. Store at room temperature. Crushed tablet preferred even for infants. Drug interactions less than with RTV/PI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Common:</strong> diarrhea, nausea, vomiting, headache</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Less common:</strong> asthenia, abdominal pain, rash, lipodystrophy.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Ritonavir (RTV)</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Suspension: 80mg/ml Capsule: 100mg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Take with food to increase absorption and reduce GI side effects. Oral solution must be refrigerated. Can be kept at room temperature (25°C) if used within 30 days. Bitter taste, coat mouth with peanut butter or chocolate milk. If given with ddI there should be 2 hours between taking each drug.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Common:</strong> N/V, diarrhea, headache, abdominal pain, anorexia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Less Common:</strong> circumoral paraesthesia, increased LFTs, lipodystrophy, elevated cholesterol and triglycerides, hyperglycemia.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Item</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peripheral neuropathy</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
|                       | • Transient or mild discomfort, no limitation of activity  
|                       | • no medical intervention/treatment required  
|                       | • Moderate limitation of activity, some assistance might be needed  
|                       | • Non-narcotic analgesia required  
|                       | • Marked limitation in activity, some assistance usually required, medical intervention/therapy required, hospitalization possible  
|                       | • Severe discomfort and/or severe impairment (decrease or loss of sensation up to knees or wrists) narcotic analgesia required  
|                       | • Life-threatening, extreme limitation in of activity, significant assistance required, significant medical intervention/therapy required, hospitalization/therapy required, hospice care  
|                       | • Incapacitating or not responsive to narcotic analgesia  
|                       | • Sensory loss involves limbs and trunk |
|Cutaneous/Rash/Dermatitis** | Erythema, pruritus  
|                       | Diffuse, maculopapular rash or dry desquamation  
|                       | Vesculation or moist desquamation or ulceration*  
<p>|                       | Erythema multiforme or suspected Stevens-Johnson syndrome or Toxic |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Management</th>
<th>Continue ARV Provide careful clinical monitoring Consider change of a single drug if condition worsens</th>
<th>substitute responsible drug</th>
<th>Stop ARV and consult experienced physician</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Epidermal Necrolysis (TEN)
## Annex 6- Grading of adverse events in children

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Grade 1</th>
<th>Grade 2</th>
<th>Grade 3</th>
<th>Grade 4</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Mild</td>
<td>Moderate</td>
<td>Severe</td>
<td>Severe Life-threatening</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diarrhoea</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>≥1 year of age</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;1 year of age</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nausea</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vomiting</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acute systemic allergic reaction</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Grade 1</th>
<th>Grade 2</th>
<th>Grade 3</th>
<th>Grade 4</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Mild</td>
<td>Moderate</td>
<td>Severe</td>
<td>Severe Life-threatening</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Diarrhoea</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>≥1 year of age</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt;1 year of age</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nausea</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vomiting</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acute systemic allergic reaction</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parameter</td>
<td>Grade 1 Mild</td>
<td>Grade 2 Moderate</td>
<td>Grade 3 Severe</td>
<td>Grade 4 Severe Life-threatening</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pancreatitis</td>
<td>hours.</td>
<td>indicated or mild angio oedema.</td>
<td>intervention indicated or symptomatic mild bronchospasm.</td>
<td>laryngeal oedema.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rash</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>Symptomatic and hospitalization not indicated (other than emergency treatment).</td>
<td>Symptomatic and hospitalization not indicated (other than emergency treatment).</td>
<td>Life-threatening consequences (e.g. Circulatory failure, haemorrhage, sepsis).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alteration in personality-behaviour or mood</td>
<td>Alteration causing no or minimal interference with usual social and functional activities</td>
<td>Alteration causing greater than minimal interference with usual social and functional activities.</td>
<td>Alteration causing inability to perform usual social and functional activities and intervention indicated.</td>
<td>Behaviour potentially harmful to self or others or with life-threatening consequences.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Altered Mental Status</td>
<td>Changes causing no or minimal interference with usual</td>
<td>Mild lethargy or somnolence causing greater than minimal interference with usual social and</td>
<td>Onset of confusion, memory impairment, lethargy, or somnolence</td>
<td>Onset of delirium, obtundation, or coma.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parameter</td>
<td>Grade 1</td>
<td>Grade 2</td>
<td>Grade 3</td>
<td>Grade 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Mild</td>
<td>Moderate</td>
<td>Severe</td>
<td>Severe Life-threatening</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>social and functional activities</td>
<td>functional activities.</td>
<td>causing inability to perform usual social and functional activities.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Source: Antiretroviral therapy of HIV infection in infants and children in resource-limited settings. WHO 2006
Annex 7
Laboratory Grading of Adverse Events in Adults and Adolescents (ACTG)

### Laboratory Test Abnormalities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Grade 1 toxicity</th>
<th>Grade 2 toxicity</th>
<th>Grade 3 toxicity</th>
<th>Grade 4 toxicity</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Haemoglobin</td>
<td>8.0-9.4 g/dL</td>
<td>7.0-7.9 g/dL</td>
<td>6.5-6.9 g/dL</td>
<td>&lt;6.5 g/dL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Absolute Neutrophil</td>
<td>1,000-1,500 mm³</td>
<td>750-990 mm³</td>
<td>500-749 mm³</td>
<td>&lt;500 mm³</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Count</td>
<td>-75,000-99,000</td>
<td>50,000-74,999</td>
<td>20,000-49,999 mm³</td>
<td>&lt;20,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Platelets</td>
<td>-</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALT</td>
<td>1.25-2.5 X upper</td>
<td>2.5-5 X upper</td>
<td>5.0-10 X upper</td>
<td>10 X upper</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>normal limit</td>
<td>normal limit</td>
<td>normal limit</td>
<td>normal limit</td>
<td>normal limit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bilirubin</td>
<td>1-1.5 X ULN</td>
<td>1.5-2.5 X ULN</td>
<td>2.5-5 X upper</td>
<td>&gt;5 x upper</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amylase/lipase</td>
<td>1-1.5 X ULN</td>
<td>1.5-2 X ULN</td>
<td>2-5 X upper</td>
<td>&gt;5 x upper</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Triglycerides *</td>
<td>200-399 mg/dL</td>
<td>400-750 mg/dL</td>
<td>751-1200 mg/dL</td>
<td>&gt;1200 mg/dL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cholesterol *</td>
<td>1.0 –1.3 X Upper</td>
<td>1.3-1.6 X Upper</td>
<td>1.6-2.0 X Upper</td>
<td>2.0 X Upper</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>normal limit</td>
<td>normal limit</td>
<td>normal limit</td>
<td>normal limit</td>
<td>normal limit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>MANAGEMENT</strong></td>
<td>Continue ARV</td>
<td>substitute</td>
<td>Stop ARV</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Repeat test 2</td>
<td>responsible drug</td>
<td>and consult</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>weeks after initial</td>
<td></td>
<td>experience</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>test and reassess</td>
<td></td>
<td>physician</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Lipid imbalances</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>could be managed</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>with diet,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>exercise and</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>pharmacologically</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>with the use of</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>fibrates.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ALWAYS SEEK</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>EXPERT ADVICE IN</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CASE OF DOUBT</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Grade 1** (Mild reaction): are bothersome but do not require changes in therapy

**Grade 2** (Moderate reaction): consider continuation of ART as long as feasible. If the patient does not improve in symptomatic therapy, consider single-drug substitution.

**Grade 3** (Severe reaction): Substitute offending drug without stopping ART. Closely monitor using laboratory and clinical parameters.

**Grade 4** (Severe life-threatening reaction): Immediately discontinue all ARV drugs, manage the medical event with symptomatic and supportive therapy, and reintroduce ARV drugs using a modified regimen (i.e. with an ARV substitution for the offending drug) when the patient is stabilised. Life-threatening toxicity includes severe hepatitis, pancreatitis, lactic acidosis or Steven-Johnson syndrome.
### Annex 8-Grading toxicities in children by selected laboratory findings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Grade 1 Mild</th>
<th>Grade 2 Moderate</th>
<th>Grade 3 Severe</th>
<th>Grade 4 Severe Life-threatening</th>
<th>Life-threatening</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Haemoglobin (g/dL)</td>
<td>8.5 – 10.0</td>
<td>7.5 – &lt;8.5</td>
<td>6.5 – &lt;7.5</td>
<td>&lt;6.5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ANC (mm$^3$)</td>
<td>750 – &lt;1,000</td>
<td>500 – 749</td>
<td>250 – 500</td>
<td>&lt;250</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Platelets (mm$^3$)</td>
<td>100,000 – &lt;125,000</td>
<td>50,000 – &lt;100,000</td>
<td>25,000 – &lt;50,000</td>
<td>&lt;25,000 or bleeding</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALT (SGPT) x ULN</td>
<td>1.25 – 2.5</td>
<td>2.6 – 5.0 x ULN</td>
<td>5.1 – 10.0 x ULN</td>
<td>&gt;10.0 x ULN</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AST (SGOT) x ULN</td>
<td>1.25 – 2.5</td>
<td>2.6 – 5.0 x ULN</td>
<td>5.1 – 10.0 x ULN</td>
<td>&gt;10.0 x ULN</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bilirubin (&gt;2 weeks of age)</td>
<td>1.1 – 1.5</td>
<td>1.6 – 2.5 x ULN</td>
<td>2.6 – 5.0 x ULN</td>
<td>&gt;5.0 x ULN</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lipase x ULN</td>
<td>1.1 – 1.5</td>
<td>1.6 – 3.0 x ULN</td>
<td>3.1 – 5.0 x ULN</td>
<td>&gt;5.0 x ULN</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pancreatic amylase x ULN</td>
<td>1.1 – 1.5</td>
<td>1.6 – 2.0 x ULN</td>
<td>2.1 – 5.0 x ULN</td>
<td>&gt;5.0 x ULN</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cholesterol (fasting, &lt;18 years old mg/dL)</td>
<td>170 – &lt;200</td>
<td>200 – 300</td>
<td>&gt;300</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glucose, serum, Nonfasting (mg/dL)</td>
<td>116 – &lt;161</td>
<td>161 – &lt;251</td>
<td>251 – 500</td>
<td>&gt;500</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glucose, serum, high: Fasting (mg/dL)</td>
<td>110 - &lt;126</td>
<td>126 - &lt;251</td>
<td>251 - 500</td>
<td>&gt;500</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lactate</td>
<td>&lt;2.0 x ULN without acidosis</td>
<td>≥2.0 x ULN without acidosis</td>
<td>Increased lactate with pH &lt;7.3 without life threatening consequences or related condition present</td>
<td>Increased lactate with pH &lt;7.3 with life threatening consequences (e.g. neurological findings, coma) or related condition present</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Triglycerides: Fasting (mg/dL)</td>
<td>NA</td>
<td>500 - &lt;751</td>
<td>751 - 1,200</td>
<td>&gt;1,200</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Source: Antiretroviral therapy of HIV infection in infants and children in resource-limited settings. WHO 2006
**Annex 8: Pediatric TB screening tool**

### Follow Up Visit

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Children TB screening questions</th>
<th>Date:</th>
<th>Date:</th>
<th>Date:</th>
<th>Date:</th>
<th>Date:</th>
<th>Date:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Current cough</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fever</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Poor weight gain*</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Close Contact history with TB pt.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*poor wt gain = reported wt loss, very low wt (<-3 Z-score), or underwt (< -2 Z-score), or confirmed wt loss (>5%) since the last visit, or growth curve flattening

### Evaluation for positive TB screening

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bacteriology:</th>
<th>date ordered</th>
<th>date result received</th>
<th>result (+, -ve, Not Done)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gastric Aspirate/Induced sputum/ Sputum</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Radiology: CxR, etc.</th>
<th>date ordered</th>
<th>date received</th>
<th>result (Suggestive, inconclusive, other dx, Not Done)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Other: FNA, etc.</th>
<th>date ordered</th>
<th>date received</th>
<th>result (+, -ve, Not Done)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

**TB diagnosis date:** / / Circle type of TB: PTB : smear pos, smear neg, EPTB  

**Is the child eligible for IPT?** Yes___ No____ If no, reason If yes, start IPT and use the chart below

### Contraindications for IPT: Active TB, active hepatitis, allergy to INH, peripheral neuropathy

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Date collected</th>
<th>INH</th>
<th>TB Symptoms [cough, fever, failure to gain wt or wt loss] (yes, no)</th>
<th>Hepatitis Sx [abdominal pain, nausea, vomiting, abnormal LFT] (yes, no)</th>
<th>Neurologic Sx [numbness, tingling, paresthesia] (yes, no)</th>
<th>Rash (yes, no)</th>
<th>Adherence (≥95% = good; 85.94% = Fair; &lt;85% = Poor)</th>
<th>Remark</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>/</strong>/__</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>/</strong>/__</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>/</strong>/__</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>/</strong>/__</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>/</strong>/__</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Outcome of IPT (Write Date):** Completed _/__/__ Defaulted _/__/__ Died _/__/__ Interrupted for any reason _/__/__

**Key:** If there are symptoms suggesting TB during follow up, stop INH and work up for TB.

If there are symptoms suggesting hepatitis, hold INH. Can resume when liver function normalizes.
If there are neurologic symptoms, continue INH and give pyridoxine 50mg daily. NB this side effect is rare if the child is already on pyridoxine skin rash is very rare, if occurs and is extensive, discontinue INH, and give anti histamine

### Annex 9: Adult TB screening tool

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Follow Up</th>
<th>Children TB screening questions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Date:</td>
<td>Date:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. Current cough</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Fever</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Weight lose</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Night seats</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Evaluate for TB if "yes" to anyone of the above (positive TB screening)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bacteriology: Sputum for AFB (+/- induced)</th>
<th>Done = yes/no</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Radiology: CxR, etc.</td>
<td>Done = yes/no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Result (Suggestive, inconclusive, other dx, Not Done)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FNA, culture, ultrasound etc</td>
<td>Done = yes/no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If done result</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TB diagnosed</td>
<td>Yes (write type of TB)/No</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Is patient eligible for IPT | Yes/No |

**Contraindications for IPT:** Active TB, active hepatitis, allergy to INH, peripheral neuropathy

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>IPT start date</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Date INH collected</th>
<th>TB Symptoms (cough, fever, weight loss) (yes, no)</th>
<th>Hepatotoxicity (abd pain, nausea, vomiting, abnormal LFT)</th>
<th>Neurologic Sx (numbness, tingling, paresthesia) (yes, no)</th>
<th>Rash (yes, no)</th>
<th>Adherence (&gt;95% = good; 85-94% = Fair; &lt;85% = Poor)</th>
<th>Remark</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><em><strong>/</strong></em>/___</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em><strong>/</strong></em>/___</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em><strong>/</strong></em>/___</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em><strong>/</strong></em>/___</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em><strong>/</strong></em>/___</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Outcome of IPT (Write Date):** Completed ___/___/___ Defaulted ___/___/___ Died ___/___/___

**Patient stopped:** ___/___/___ Stopped ___/___/___ Transferred out ___/___/___

225